Contents

Introduction viii
Acknowledgments ix
Source Acknowledgments x

1 Asking and Answering Questions 1
   1.1 Asking questions 1
   1.2 Giving answers 6

2 Noun Phrases 12
   2.1 Noun + possessor 12
   2.2 Noun + another noun 14
   2.3 Noun + adjective 16
   2.4 Noun + verb 16
   2.5 Noun + demonstrative 17

3 Numbers, Classifiers and Quantity 20
   3.1 Numbers 20
   3.2 Classifiers 24
   3.3 Quantity 26
   3.4 Group words 27

4 Saying 'To Be' with Adalah and Ialah 29
   4.1 The difference between adalah and ialah 29
   4.2 The function of adalah and ialah 30
   4.3 Optional adalah and ialah 30
   4.4 Merupakan 31

5 Prepositions 33
   5.1 Basic prepositions 33
   5.2 Other prepositions 35

6 Uses of Ada 38
   6.1 There is/are/was/were 38
   6.2 To be at a place 39
   6.3 To have 39

7 Comparing 41
   7.1 How to say 'more than' or 'less than' 41
   7.2 How to say 'most' 44
   7.3 Saying 'same as' or 'as ... as' 45
8 Uses of Yang
8.1 To refer to a person or thing 47
8.2 To say 'the person who(m) ...' or 'the thing that ...' 48
8.3 Asking 'which (one),'# 48

9 Transitive and Intransitive Verbs 50
9.1 Intransitive verbs 50
9.2 Transitive verbs 54
9.3 Deriving transitive from the intransitive 57

10 Ber- 61
10.1 To have what the base word indicates 61
10.2 To use or wear 62
10.3 To do what the base word indicates 63
10.4 Ber+ numeral 64
10.5 Ber-an 64
10.6 Reduplicated ber- 66

11 MeN- 68
11.1 Sound changes 68
11.2 Transitive meN- verbs 70
11.3 Intransitive meN- verbs 71
11.4 MeN- adjectives 73
11.5 Undifferentiated meN- and ber- verbs 73

12 MeN-kan 76
12.1 Indicating the transitive 76
12.2 Causative 77
12.3 Benefactive 78
12.4 Optional -kan 80
12.5 Undifferentiated meN-kan and ber- 80
12.6 Contrast between meN-kan and member-kan 81
12.7 MeN-kan adjectives 82

13 MeN-i 85
13.1 Various meanings of meN-i verbs 85
13.2 Contrast between meN-i and meN-kan verbs 87
13.3 Undifferentiated meN-i and nieN-kan 88
13.4 Other meN-i and meN-kan contrasts 89
13.5 MeN-i and corresponding intransitive verbs 89
21 Ways to Say ‘Because’
  21.1 (Oleh) karena
  21.2 (Oleh) sebab
  21.3 Gara-gara
  21.4 Mentang-mentang
  21.5 Lantaran

22 Ways to Say ‘If’
  22.1 If
  22.2 If ... then ...
  22.3 If only
  22.4 What if ...?

23 When and While
  23.1 Ketika and waktu
  23.2 Sementara
  23.3 Sambil
  23.4 Sedangkan

24 Although and Not ... But
  24.1 Although, even though
  24.2 Not ... but

25 The ... More ... the ... More ...
  25.1 Makin ... makin ...
  25.2 (Berk)tambah ... (ber)tambah ...
  25.3 Kian ... kian ...

26 Both ... and ... / ... As Well As ...
  26.1 Baik ... maupun

27 Let Alone
  27.1 Jangankan ... pun/saja
  27.2 Apalagi ... saja
  27.3 Kok ... saja and boro-boro ... saja

28 Imperatives
  28.1 Commands
  28.2 Requests
  28.3 Inviting
  28.4 Offering
28.5 Advising 179
28.6 How to say 'do not' 179
28.7 Imperatives in object-focus 183

29 Reporting What Has Been Said 188
29.1 'Say' verbs in Indonesian 188
29.2 Direct reporting 188
29.3 Indirect reporting 190

Glossary 195
Index 197
Introduction

A Student’s Guide to Indonesian Grammar is intended for secondary students in Years 10–12 and for tertiary students beginning Indonesian. It presents grammar in an accessible and fun way by focusing on its use in daily communication. Many of the exercises in this book are designed for pair or group interaction, while others are suitable for independent learning.

The earlier chapters in the book cover lighter topics, such as asking and answering questions, numbers and prepositions. Subsequent chapters cover more difficult topics. Teachers may wish to use the easier chapters in the early part of the year as a warm-up, if their students have already studied the topics beforehand, then move on to other chapters. Each chapter is self-contained, allowing teachers to select topics to coincide with other teaching materials. Cross-referencing within and between chapters provides easy access to related grammatical points.

Each chapter in this book covers one grammatical topic. For each part of the topic, an explanation is given, supported by examples. Exercises (Latihan) provide immediate reinforcement of the grammar learnt. Vocabulary (Kosakata) is given for many of the exercises. Where a dictionary may be required, this is clearly specified.

Grammar is an integral part of language use. It forms part of how people communicate with each other in daily life. Often a communicative situation determines people’s choice of words and way of saying things. For example, people may speak differently in informal and formal situations. In addition, people may write differently from the way they speak. The communicative dimensions are complex and are impossible to be dealt with comprehensively in a book of this sort. However, throughout this book, in the explanations of grammatical topics and in the accompanying exercises, indications are provided as to the situations in which certain language uses are most appropriate.

Additional information is given under the following headings.
• Did you know?
• Note
• Handy expression
• Be careful!

This information relates to useful expressions, cultural notes and errors to avoid, which students and teachers may find interesting and helpful.

The introduction of grammatical terms is unavoidable in a grammar book and some learners may find this rather daunting. In this book, grammatical terms are used only where no simpler alternative is available. Grammatical terms introduced for the first time are italicised and an explanation of the term is provided.
The suggestion for this book was first put to me by Ray O’Farrell, the publishing director at Oxford University Press, when my son Haris was merely three months old. A year later, I began to work on the manuscript. Ray has since moved to another position and so has not seen this work in its completed form, but I am very grateful to him for initiating the project in the first place. Lisa Carroll, my publisher, has followed this project through. Many thanks also go to her.

This book has benefited greatly from comments and criticisms from many people. I would especially like to thank Linda Hibbs, Paul Fyffe, Nyoman Riasa and an anonymous reviewer, who all made detailed comments on the manuscript. My students at La Trobe University trialed the chapters and questioned a number of points. I much appreciate their useful suggestions. My thanks also go to those who furnished examples or made suggestions through various discussions on Indonesian grammar, particularly Umar Muslim, Harry Aveling, and Peter Chamberlain. Ron Baird and Tracy Lee in the Department of Asian Studies at La Trobe University provided much needed technical assistance. I thank them both for their help. This book owes a great deal of its present form to my editors, Stephen Roche and Jenny Bilos. I am very grateful to both of them for their hard work.


This book is for Haris, from whose mouth springs forth ever so effortlessly one object-focus sentence after another.
Source Acknowledgments

The author and publisher wish to thank copyright holders for granting permission to reproduce copyright materials. Copyright holders are acknowledged where known, otherwise sources are indicated.


Every effort has been made to trace the original source of all material reproduced in this book. Where the attempt has been unsuccessful, the author and publisher would be pleased to hear from the copyright holder concerned to rectify the omission.
There are different ways of asking questions in Indonesian, as in English. Sentences that ask questions are called *interrogative* sentences. In this chapter we look at ways of asking and answering questions.

**Raised intonation**

One simple way of asking questions in Indonesian is by raising our intonation. In writing, this is indicated by a question mark. Except for this question mark, the sentence looks exactly the same as a statement.

- **Kamu mahasiswa?**
  Are you a university student? (Literally: You are a university student?)

- **Anda tinggal di sini?**
  Do you live here? (Literally: You live here?)

- **Dia sakit?**
  Is he/she sick? (Literally: He/she is sick?)

**Using apakah**

Another way of asking questions is by using *apakah* at the beginning of a sentence. The word *apakah*, like the word ‘do’ in English when you ask ‘Do you live here?’, does not have a meaning in itself; it simply tells us that the sentence is a question. *Apakah* makes the question sound formal.

- **Apakah anda tinggal di sini?**
  Do you live here?

- **Apakah dia suka apel?**
  Does he/she like apples?

You can make the questions less formal by dropping the -*kah* at the end of this question word.

- **Apa anda tinggal di sini?**
- **Apa dia suka apel?**
Ask a question in Indonesian about each of the following pictures using raised intonation, apa(kah) or apa.

Example:
Apa(kah) ini apel? Ini apa?

KOSAKATA
apel, apel, apel
batur, batur, batur
coklat, coklat, coklat
jagung, jagung, jagung
kuning, kuning, kuning
kue, kue, kue
putih, putih, putih
makanan, makanan, makanan
panen, panen, panen
tofu, tofu, tofu

LATIHAN 1

Apa itu apel?
Is that an apple?

Apa nama apel itu?
What is the name of that apple?

Nama apel itu apa?
What is the name of that apple?
Questions with 'wh-' words

Some questions are referred to in English as ‘wh-’ questions because most of the question words start with ‘wh-’; for example, ‘what’, ‘who’, ‘where’ and ‘when’. The Indonesian equivalents of these question words are discussed below.

APA: ‘WHAT’

Apa is used to ask about objects, concrete or abstract. It means ‘what’ or ‘what kind of’.

Apa nama binatang itu?
What is the name of that animal?

Musik apa itu?
What kind of music is that?

Nama sekolah itu apa?
What is the name of that school? (Literally: The name of that school is what?)

SIAPA: ‘WHO’

Siapa is used to ask questions to do with a person, such as a person’s name, who a person is, or to whom an object belongs.

Siapa dia?
Who is he/she?

Siapa namanya?
What is his/her name?

Tas siapa ini?
Whose bag is this?
(The bag is associated with the person who owns it.)

BERAPA: ‘HOW MANY’, ‘HOW MUCH’

Berapa is used to ask questions to do with numbers and quantity, such as the number of people, weight and measurements.

Berapa orang datang ke pesta itu?
How many people came to that party?

Halaman berapa?
What page? (In Indonesian the question literally means ‘Page how many?’, Berapa is used because the answer has to do with numbers.)

You can also add ke to this question word to mean ‘what number’ in a numerical series.

A: Kamu anak keberapa?
Which child are you? (Literally: What number child are you?)

B: Saya anak ke dua.
I am the second child.

Asking and Answering Questions 3
MANA

Mana is used in questions, usually not by itself, but attached to the preposition di, ke or dari: di mana (where), ke mana (where to), dari mana (where from). These expressions can be placed either at the beginning or at the end of a sentence.

- *Di mana kamu tinggal?*
  Where do you live?

- *Mereka pergi ke mana?*
  Where are they going?/Where did they go?

- *Dari mana uang ini?*
  Where is this money from? (Where did you get it from?)

Mana can also be preceded by the word yang to ask ‘which one’.

- *Yang mana mobil mu?*
  Which one is your car?

- *Topimu yang mana?*
  Which one is your hat?

KAPAN: ‘WHEN’

Kapan is used to ask about a particular point in time or duration.

- *Kapan liburan sekolah mulai?*
  When does the school holiday start?

- *Kapan anda akan datang?*
  When are you coming?

Even though kapan translates into English as ‘when’, it is only used in questions. We cannot use it as a conjunction (to connect one part of a sentence with another), as in ‘I was watching television when she arrived’ or ‘When I was born, my mother was 33’. For expressions like these, we use ketika or waktu.

MENGAPA, KENAPA: ‘WHY’

Mengapa and kenapa both mean ‘why’. However, kenapa is more informal.

- *Mengapa anda terlambat?*
  Why are you late?

- *Kenapa kamu diam saja?*
  Why are you quiet (not saying anything)?

BAGAIMANA: ‘HOW’

Bagaimana is used in different situations, from a simple everyday question, such as ‘how are you’, to ways of doing something.

- *Bagaimana kabarmu? (= Apa kabar?)*
  How are you?

- *Bagaimana caranya mengupas kelapa?*
  How do we open (literally ‘peel’) a coconut?
LATIHAN 2

Ask a question in Indonesian about each of these pictures using specific question words (‘wh-’ question words).

1. Who is she?

2. What page, Miss?

3. How are you?

4. Why is he crying?

Using tags *bukan* and *ya*

Another form of question is with tags, such as *bukan* and *ya*. This type of question is more like seeking confirmation from the person to whom you are talking. *Bukan* is formal and is therefore not suitable to use with friends. Its short version, *kan*, is more informal and is equivalent to *ya* when used in questions. Both tags are widely used in spoken Indonesian.
Anda guru, bukan?
You are a teacher, aren't you?

Saudara setuju dengan kami, bukan?
You agree with us, don't you?

Kamu tinggal di rumah itu kan?
You live in that house, don't you?

Kalian bergurau kan?
You are all joking, aren't you?

Ini kelas bahasa Indonesia ya?
This is Indonesian class, isn't it?

Jill orang Australia ya?
Jill is an Australian, isn't she?

Giving answers

Just as there are different ways of asking questions, there are different ways of responding to them. Some common ways of answering questions are discussed below.

Positive answers with ya or iya
To give a positive answer in Indonesian, we can use the word ya.

A: Anda wartawan?
Are you a journalist?
B: Ya.
Yes.

Often people say iya to emphasise or confirm an answer. Iya can be used, for example, to respond to tag questions.

A: Kamu kakak Susan kan?
You are Susan's older sibling, aren't you?
B: Iya.
Yes.

Anak: Pak, nanti liburan sekolah kita ke Jakarta ya?
Dad, next school holiday we're going to Jakarta, aren't we?
Bapak: Iya.
Yes, all right.

LATIHAN 3

Ask questions using the tags bukan, kan or ya. Remember that these tags differ in their degree of formality. Use them appropriately by taking into account the person to whom you are talking. Answer each question using ya or iya.

1 To a stranger at a bank: 'Today is 15 June, isn't it?'
2 To your mother: 'This chicken is for me, isn't it?'
3 To your older sister: 'You like that film, don't you?'
4 To your teacher: 'Our homework is page 12, isn’t it?'
5 To a bus driver: ‘This bus goes to the shopping centre, doesn’t it?’
   (‘Go to’ = ke. You do not need to translate ‘go’, because ke + place-
    name already means ‘go’; for example, ke toko means ‘go to the shop’.)

Negative answers with tidak, bukan or belum
To give a negative answer in Indonesian, we need to choose between three words: tidak, bukan or belum.

BUKAN
Bukan is used to negate a noun (that is, when you want to negate a thing, whether concrete, such as a book, or abstract, such as a name). In the examples below, the negated words are underlined.

A: Ini bukumu?
   Is this your book?
B: Bukan.
   No, it's not.

A: Nama anda Raymond?
   Is your name Raymond?
B: Bukan.
   No, it's not.

TIDAK
Tidak is used to negate everything else other than a noun (verbs, adjectives, adverbs).

A: Bapakmu bekerja di kantor itu?
   Does your father work in that office?
B: Tidak.
   No, he doesn’t.

A: Apakah anda suka film horor?
   Do you like horror films?
B: Tidak.
   No, I don’t.

BELUM
Belum means ‘not yet’ and is used to indicate that something is not yet done.

Leni: Nia, kamu sudah makan?
   Nia, have you eaten?
Nia: Belum.
   No, not yet.

Belum can also be used to answer the ‘Have you ever ...?’ type of question.

A: Apakah anda pernah ke Indonesia?
   Have you ever been to Indonesia?
B: Belum.
   No, I haven’t. (No, not yet.)
A: Kamu pernah makan durian?
Have you ever eaten a durian?
B: Belum.
No, I haven't. (No, not yet.)

LATIHAN 4

The following game, called Siapa saya?, is an exercise in asking questions with raised intonation and apakah, and giving positive answers with ya and negative answers with tidak or bukan.

Procedure:
One person in the class is chosen to assume the identity of a certain character (person, cartoon character or an animal). The character is chosen by the rest of the class without the person knowing. (Ask this person to go out of the room while the rest of the class decide on the character.) Put a paper hat on the person with the character's name written on it or get the person to sit with his or her back to the board, then write the character's name on the board.

The person has to start by asking questions to find out who he or she is. The person can only ask questions that require 'yes' or 'no' answers. The class can only answer ya, tidak, bukan or belum. No other information should be given. The person cannot ask, for example, 'What is my profession?' or 'Where do I live?'. Here are some examples of such questions.

Person A: Saya orang?
Am I a person?
Class: Ya.
Yes.
Person A: Apakah saya laki-laki?
Am I male?
Class: Bukan.
No.
Person A: Saya sudah pernah ke Australia?
Have I been to (= visited) Australia?
Class: Belum.
Not yet.

You can go on as long as you like with one person or limit the number of questions and, if the person cannot find out the identity of his or her character, he or she has to sit down.

Positive answers with mau, sudah, boleh or bisa
Mau, sudah, boleh and bisa are used in answers to questions that also contain them. Mau expresses a want or wish; sudah indicates that an action has been completed (the opposite of belum); boleh shows permission; bisa shows capability or permission, depending on the context. When used as permission, bisa means the same as boleh. These words are sometimes preceded by ya or iya when used as an answer.
A: **Mau makan?**  
Do you want to eat? (Notice that the subject 'you' is often not mentioned in Indonesian.)
B: **Iya, mau.**  
Yes, I do.
A: **Kamu sudah mandi?**  
Have you bathed?
B: **Sudah.**  
Yes, I have.
A: **Boleh/bisa saya pinjam topinya?**  
May/can I borrow the hat? (= your hat) → permission
B: **Ya, boleh/bisa.**  
Yes, you may/can.
A: **Bisa kita keluar lewat sini?**  
Can we go out this way? → capability
B: **Ya, bisa.**  
Yes, you can.

To emphasise a positive answer, we can add the word *saja* after *mau*, *boleh* or *bisa* (but not after *sudah*).

A: **Boleh makan kukenya?**  
Can I eat the cake? (I' is not mentioned.)
B: **Ya, boleh saja.**  
Yes, of course.
A: **Mau jalan-jalan?**  
Do you want to go for a walk? (You' is not mentioned.)
B: **Ya, mau saja.**  
Yes, of course.

It is common to further emphasise the answer by reduplicating the answer word, followed by *saja*. This is not applicable to *belum*.

A: **Bisa pinjam CD-nya?**  
Can I borrow the CD? (= your CD)
B: **Iya, bisa-bisa saja.**  
Yes, of course you can.
A: **Kamu mau kopi?**  
Would you like a coffee?
B: **Ya, mau-mau saja.**  
Yes, of course I would.

---

**LATIHAN 5**

Work in pairs, taking turns to ask and answer the following questions in Indonesian. The (+) symbol means that the answer must be positive; the (-) symbol means that the answer must be negative.

**Note**  
If you interview your teacher, do not use *kamu*. Rather, you should say 'Bu + her name' or 'Pak + his name'.

1 A: Murid boleh merokok di sekolah ini?
   B: (+)
2 A: Kamu mau belajar bahasa Indonesia di Jakarta?
   B: (+)
3 A: Boleh bapak saya pinjam mobilmu?
   B: (-)
4 A: Kamu pernah ke Spanyol?
   B: (+)
5 A: Kamu menelepon saya kemarin?
   B: (-)
6 A: Kamu sudah mandi?
   B: (-)
7 A: Adikmu mau ayam goreng ini?
   B: (-)
8 A: Pagi ini kamu sudah makan?
   B: (+)
9 A: Apakah kamu pernah mencoba makan durian?
   B: (+)
10 A: Menurut anda, harga mobil itu mahal atau tidak?
   B: (+)

LATIHAN 6
Conduct a survey among your classmates to find out their habits, likes and dislikes. Copy the following tables, turning the information in the left column of each table into questions. Then interview five people, asking them the questions that you have prepared, and record their responses.

Kesukaan: makanan dan minuman
Favourites: food and drink

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TEMAN 1</th>
<th>TEMAN 2</th>
<th>TEMAN 3</th>
<th>TEMAN 4</th>
<th>TEMAN 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>banyak makan buah-buahan</td>
<td>eat a lot of fruit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sering makan pizza</td>
<td>often eat pizza</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banyak minum susu</td>
<td>drink a lot of milk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sering makan es krim</td>
<td>often eat ice cream</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Noun Phrases

In this chapter we will learn about how a noun can combine with other words. For example:

- *baju biru* (blue shirt)
- *guru saya* (my teacher)
- *murid itu* (that student)

These combinations of words are called *phrases*.

A phrase is a meaningful group of words, one of which is usually the main word (technically called the head). A phrase in which the head is a noun is called a *noun phrase*.

In Indonesian noun phrases, the head comes before the other word(s), while in English it is generally the other way round. Here are the combinations that you will find in Indonesian:

- noun + possessor
- noun + another noun
- noun + adjective
- noun + verb

For simplicity, head nouns are referred to as nouns throughout the rest of this chapter, and they are underlined for easy identification.

### Noun + possessor

In this type of noun phrase, the noun refers to something that belongs to a person or animal. For instance, in *buku Nina* (Nina’s book) below, a book is being referred to, so the word *buku* comes first. *Nina* (name of a person) specifies to whom the book belongs, so it is placed after the noun. Similarly, in *ayah saya* (my father), ‘father’ is being referred to, and the word ‘my’ specifies that the father belongs to you, so *ayah* comes first and *saya* after.
Widya has hid page 13 somewhere in this book.

...If you find it, you win a prize!
Noun + another noun

In this type of noun phrase, the second noun is also related to the head noun, but not as a possessor as in the above. The second noun may specify the location mentioned in the head, such as 'school library' (library located at a school) or 'football field' (a field for playing football), or give other specifications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>ANOTHER NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>perpustakaan</td>
<td>sekolah</td>
<td>school library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>library</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lapangan</td>
<td>sepak bola</td>
<td>football field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>field</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sampul</td>
<td>buku</td>
<td>book cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cover</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merek</td>
<td>komputer</td>
<td>computer brand name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brand</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Did you know?
The word for glove in Indonesian is:
Kaus tangan
S. fabric hand → glove
LATIHAN 2

Write the Indonesian equivalents of the English noun phrases describing these pictures.

1  Post office

2  Movie theatre

3  Rubbish bin
### Noun + adjective

In this type of noun phrase, the adjective that follows the noun describes such things as the size, colour, taste or, generally, the quality of the thing referred to by the noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rumah</td>
<td>besar</td>
<td>big house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>big house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepeda</td>
<td>kecil</td>
<td>small bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycle</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>small bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balon</td>
<td>hijau</td>
<td>green balloon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balloon</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>green balloon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teh</td>
<td>manis</td>
<td>sweet tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tēa</td>
<td>sweet</td>
<td>sweet tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rumah</td>
<td>sakit</td>
<td>hospital (literally 'house for the sick')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>sick</td>
<td>hospital (literally 'house for the sick')</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Noun + verb

When the noun is followed by a verb, the verb indicates the activity for which the noun is used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rumah</td>
<td>makan</td>
<td>eating house, restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>eating house, restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gedung</td>
<td>olahraga</td>
<td>sports hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hall</td>
<td>sport</td>
<td>sports hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kamar</td>
<td>mandi</td>
<td>bathroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>bathroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papan</td>
<td>tulis</td>
<td>blackboard/whiteboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>board</td>
<td>to write</td>
<td>blackboard/whiteboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempat</td>
<td>tidur</td>
<td>place to sleep → bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>to sleep</td>
<td>place to sleep → bed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can also add an adjective to the phrase.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN + VERB</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rumah makan</td>
<td>mahal</td>
<td>expensive restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>expensive restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gedung olahraga</td>
<td>megah</td>
<td>grand sports hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sports' hall</td>
<td>grand</td>
<td>grand sports hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kamar mandi</td>
<td>kotor</td>
<td>dirty bathroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathroom</td>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>dirty bathroom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Noun + demonstrative

A **demonstrative** is a word that can be used to point at something, such as *ini* (this) and *itu* (that). In this type of noun phrase, the demonstrative is placed after the noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>DEMONSTRATIVE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>universitas</em></td>
<td>itu</td>
<td>that university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university</td>
<td>that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>kotak</em></td>
<td>ini</td>
<td>this box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td>this</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To form more complex noun phrases, you can combine any of the above noun phrases with the demonstrative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN + POSSESSOR</th>
<th>DEMONSTRATIVE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>mobil ayah saya</em></td>
<td><em>ini</em></td>
<td>this car of my father's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>perpustakaan sekolah</em></td>
<td><em>itu</em></td>
<td>that school library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>school library</td>
<td>that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rumah besar</em></td>
<td><em>ini</em></td>
<td>this big house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big house</td>
<td>this</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rumah makan mahal</em></td>
<td><em>itu</em></td>
<td>that expensive eating house/restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expensive restaurant</td>
<td>that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

*Ini* and *itu* can also be placed before a noun phrase to mean 'this (noun)'.

*Ini rumah saya.*

This is my house.

*Ini kantor pes.*

That is the post office.

**LATIHAN 3**

Below are noun phrases that are noun + adjective, noun + verb and noun + demonstrative. Translate each phrase into Indonesian. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1. This apple
2. Bedroom (in Indonesian, literally 'sleeping room')
3. These students
4. Those bicycles
5. Brown eyes
6. Restaurant (in Indonesian, literally 'eating house')
LATIHAN 4

Translate the following more complex noun phrases into Indonesian, working your way from right to left. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

Example:

That yellow door: Pintu kuning itu

1. My favourite song
2. Big round hat
3. Small red bird
4. Delicious fried rice
5. Black long pants

LATIHAN 5

One way of forming simple sentences in Indonesian is by combining complex noun phrases with an adjective or another noun. Write simple sentences by finding the Indonesian equivalent of the noun phrases as the adjectives below. Your sentences will have this structure: complex noun phrase + adjective or complex noun phrase + noun.

Example:

Complex noun phrase Adjective

Their big house → new

Rumah besar mereka → baru

Rumah besar mereka baru = Their big house is new.

Notice that in simple sentences like this, the word 'is' need not be translated into Indonesian. When you read the sentence, though, you will need to give a short pause where the arrow is.

1. Her sports shoes → expensive
2. Their large bathroom → green
3. That movie theatre → small
4. My motorbike → Honda
5. My mother's name → Jane

LATIHAN 6

Now that you know how to form simple and complex noun phrases and also how to write some simple sentences, try to give a simple description in Indonesian of a person or an object by using similar forms. The models below are provided to help you write your own descriptions. The noun phrases are underlined.

Present your description orally to the class. Remember to pause after the noun phrase.

1. Description of oneself:
   Nama saya Intan.
   My name is Intan.
Combining simple phrases and noun phrases can be:
- noun + possessor; for example, topi saya
- noun + another noun; for example, rumah makan
- noun + adjective; for example, rumah besar
- noun + verb; for example, kamar mandi

Remember that, as a general rule, the thing to which you are referring comes first and everything else comes after it. When translating complex noun phrases from English, work your way from right to left.

Summary

- Noun phrases can be:
  - noun + possessor; for example, topi saya
  - noun + another noun; for example, rumah makan
  - noun + adjective; for example, rumah besar
  - noun + verb; for example, kamar mandi

My age is 20 years. → I am 20 years old.

My birthplace is Melbourne.

My favourite food is fried rice and chilli sauce.

My cat's name is Manis.

The colour of Manis's fur is white.

Manis's favourite food is fried fish.

Manis's age is 20 months. → Manis is 20 months old.
Numbers, Classifiers and Quantity

Cardinal and ordinal numbers
Cardinal numbers are those we use for counting things (for example, one, two, three, one hundred), while ordinal numbers are those we use to say things in sequence. The tables below show how these two kinds of numbers are expressed in Indonesian.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUMBERS 1–10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDINAL NUMBERS</th>
<th>ORDINAL NUMBERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0: nol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1: satu</td>
<td>1st: *pertama (not kesatu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2: dua</td>
<td>2nd: kedua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3: tiga</td>
<td>3rd: ketiga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4: empat</td>
<td>4th: keempat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5: lima</td>
<td>5th: kelima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6: enam</td>
<td>6th: keenam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7: tujuh</td>
<td>7th: ketujuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8: delapan</td>
<td>8th: kedelapan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9: sembilan</td>
<td>9th: kesembilan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10: sepuluh</td>
<td>10th: kese unpuluh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Add prefix ke- to the cardinal number (except *pertama = first)
NUMBERS 11-20

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDINAL NUMBERS</th>
<th>ORDINAL NUMBERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11: sebelas</td>
<td>11th: kesebelas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12: dua belas</td>
<td>12th: kedua belas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13: tiga belas</td>
<td>13th: ketiga belas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14: empat belas</td>
<td>14th: keempat belas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15: lima belas</td>
<td>15th: kelima belas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16: enam belas</td>
<td>16th: keenam belas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17: tujuh belas</td>
<td>17th: ketujuh belas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18: delapan belas</td>
<td>18th: kedelapan belas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19: sembilan belas</td>
<td>19th: kesembilan belas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20: dua puluh</td>
<td>20th: kedua puluh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NUMBERS IN THE MULTIPLICATION OF TENS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDINAL NUMBERS</th>
<th>ORDINAL NUMBERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30: tiga puluh</td>
<td>30th: ketiga puluh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40: empat puluh</td>
<td>40th: keempat puluh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60: enam puluh</td>
<td>60th: keenam puluh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80: delapan puluh</td>
<td>80th: kedelapan puluh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90: sembilan puluh</td>
<td>90th: kesembilan puluh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BIGGER NUMBERS

- hundred: ratus
- thousand: ribu
- million: juta
- billion: miliar

Note
The prefix se- in numbers means 'one' (but it is not used for the number 1), hence:

- sepuh (one ten) 10
- sebelas (one teen) 11
- seratus (one hundred) 100
- seribu (one thousand) 1000
- sejuta (one million) 1000,000
- semiliar (one billion) 1000,000,000

To say some big numbers, follow the pattern shown below.

- 3500 = tiga ribu
- 500 = lima ratus
- → tiga ribu lima ratus
6750: 6000 = enam ribu
700 = tujuh ratus
50 = lima puluh
→ enam ribu tujuh ratus lima puluh

1,450,500: 1,000,000,000 = sejuta
450,000 = empat ratus lima puluh ribu
500 = lima ratus
→ sejuta empat ratus lima puluh ribu lima ratus

Did you know?
A soccer team in Indonesian is called kesebelasan (the eleven) because there are eleven people in a team.

LATIHAN 1
Can you say the following numbers in Indonesian?
1 15
2 310
3 564
4 2701
5 7550
6 1683
7 87,575
8 10,950
9 33,845
10 1,250,000

LATIHAN 2
How do you say the following in Indonesian? Say the non-number word first, then the ordinal number. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

Example:
Eighth person
Orang kedelapan

1 Twenty-first century
2 Seventeenth birthday
3 First child
4 Fifth month
5 Second day
6 Third book
7 Tenth film
8 Fifth president
9 One thousandth print
10 Second car
**Ke-: 'the + number'

The prefix ke- followed by a number, as in ordinal numbers, can also be used to mean 'the + number'. In this case, ke- is attached to the number, then followed by the noun.

- *ketiga anak itu*  
  the three children
- *kedua guru itu*  
  the two teachers
- *Kelima mahasiswa itu mengambil mata kuliah Antropologi.*  
  The five university students take Anthropology as their subject.
- *Keempat temannya sudah pindah ke kota lain.*  
  The four of his/her friends have moved to another city.

We can omit the noun if it is already understood or mentioned before. However, we need to add -nya after ke + number.

- *Keduananya laki-laki.*  
  Both are boys. → (referring to children)
- *Ketiganya tidak mau bicara.*  
  The three of them did not want to talk.

Sometimes the number is reduplicated for emphasis.

- *Ketiga-tiganya tidak mau bicara.*  
  All three of them did not want to talk.

**Fractions**

The Indonesian word for 'fractions' is *angka pecahan*, which literally means 'broken number'. To say 'one ...th', the prefix seper- is added to the number, except for 'half', which is prefixed by se-

- *setengah*  
  one-half
- *sepertiga*  
  one-third
- *seperempat*  
  one-quarter
- *seperdelapan*  
  one-eighth
- *seperseratus*  
  one-hundredth

For other fractions, add per- only to the larger number and place the smaller number before it.

- *dua pertiga*  
  two-thirds
- *dua perseratus*  
  two-hundredths

**Did you know?**

The word *tengah* 'half, middle' can be used to form other nouns:

- *pertengahan*  
  middle (usually for calendar time)
- *pertengahan bulan*  
  middle of the month
- *pertengahan tahun*  
  middle of the year
- *tengah hari*  
  middle of the day; midday
- *tengah jalan*  
  middle of the road
Likewise, we can also form other nouns from the numbers tiga ar empat.

pertigaan  T-intersection
perempatan  crossroad

LATIHAN 3

Say the following fractions in Indonesian.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fraction</th>
<th>Indonesian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/5</td>
<td>6 1 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/5</td>
<td>7 1 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/5</td>
<td>8 2 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4/5</td>
<td>9 2 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/5</td>
<td>10 3 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Classifiers

Classifiers are words that are used to group things in the world (according to shape, number, size and so on). Many languages have classifiers, including English. For example:

- a bar of soap or chocolate
- a bunch of flowers
- a flock of sheep
- a herd of cattle

Classifiers are used to classify, not only those things that the words literally stand for, but also other things. For example, in Indonesian, 'ekor' literally means 'tail'; but the word is used as a classifier for animals that have tails as well as for those that do not.

- batang  literally 'log' (for example, for timber, pencil, stick)
- buah literally 'fruit' (for example, for bicycle, car, computer, essa book)
- ekor literally 'tail' (for example, for all animals)
- helai literally 'sheet' (for example, for paper, pieces of clothing, t
- orang literally 'person' (for example, for people, such as teacher student)
- potong literally 'cut' (for example, for pieces of clothing, sliced th cut-up things)
- sisir literally 'comb' (for example, for a hand of bananas)

As in English, we use these classifiers by putting in the number first followed by the classifier, then the noun. Notice below that the pre se- for 'one' is attached to the classifier; any other number is written separately.

- se+batang one+classifier
- dua number

Example:

sebatang  pohon
one+classifier  tree  →  a tree

dua

ekor

classifier

ekucing

thing  →  two cats
To ask questions with classifiers, use *berapa*, followed by the classifier, then the noun.

*Berapa batang pohon?*
How many trees?

5 batang.
Five.

*Berapa ekor kucing?*
How many cats?

Dua ekor.
Two.

**Be careful!**
When we use *se-* with a classifier to mean 'one', it must be attached to the classifier, not the noun. We cannot say, for example:

sesapi
a cow

sebuku
a book

**LATIHAN 4**

Use classifiers to identify the following things in Indonesian.
Quantity

To show quantity, we can use the following words.

- banyak
- sedikit
- beberapa
- kurang lebih
- jumlah

Banyak and sedikit
To say 'many, much, a lot', use banyak. This word can be used for things that are countable, such as people and books, as well as for things that are not countable, such as water and sugar.

*Banyak* orang datang ke rapat itu.
Many people came to that meeting.

*Tolong* beri *banyak* sambal ya.
Please give a lot of sambal (chilli paste).

To say 'a little' or 'few', use sedikit. Like banyak, we can use this word both for countable and uncountable things.

*Saya suka minum teh dengan sedikit gula.*
I like drinking tea with a little sugar.

*Murid di kelas ini hanya sedikit.*
The students in this class are few.

Beberapa
To say 'a few, a number of', use beberapa.

*Beberapa* pekerja dipecat karena ketahuan mencuri uang.
A number of workers were fired because they were caught stealing money.

Kurang lebih
Kurang lebih literally means 'less, more' and is used to say 'approximately'.

*Panjang meja ini kurang lebih satu setengah meter.*
The length of this table is approximately one and a half metres.

Jumlah
Jumlah means 'total, the total number of'.

*Jumlah* wartawan yang ke sana dua puluh orang.
The total number of journalists who went there was twenty.
Uses of Yang

Yang is very often used both in writing and speaking. It can mean ‘the one’ or ‘which, who, whom’, depending on the sentence.

Yang biru itu pena saya.
The blue one is my pen.

Lagu yang baru itu populer sekali.
The song which is new is very popular.
→ The new song is very popular.

More examples of the uses of yang are given below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>English Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Saya mau yang merah.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Yang berdiri di sana itu namanya Daniel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Kamu boleh meminjam yang plastik.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Yang tersenyum itu adalah bintang film terkenal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Yang terlambat akan didenda.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Yang tebal itu adalah kamus Inggris-Indonesia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Bis saya adalah yang nomer 87.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Buah rambutan adalah yang berwarna merah dan berambut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Kunci kantor saya adalah yang nomer 258.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Film yang menang festival itu adalah yang dibintangi oleh Julia Roberts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 1

Here are sentences with yang (the one). Find out what they mean in English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1. Saya mau yang merah.
2. Yang berdiri di sana itu namanya Daniel.
3. Kamu boleh meminjam yang plastik.
5. Yang terlambat akan didenda.
7. Bis saya adalah yang nomer 87.
8. Buah rambutan adalah yang berwarna merah dan berambut.
10. Film yang menang festival itu adalah yang dibintangi oleh Julia Roberts.
**To say ‘the person who(m) ...’ or ‘the thing that ...’**

When used to say ‘the person who(m) ...’ or ‘the thing that ...’, yang is preceded by a noun.

- **Orang yang saya lihat di jalan kemarin itu adalah Bu Yani.**
  
  *Noun* Who(m)
  
  The person whom I saw on the street yesterday was Bu Yani.

- **Email yang panjang itu adalah dari adiknya di Perancis.**
  
  *Noun* Which
  
  ‘Literally: The e-mail that is long was from his/her younger sibling in France.
  
  → That long e-mail was from his/her younger sibling in France.

**LATIHAN 2**

Complete the sentences in Indonesian with your own words.

Example:

**Orang yang bekerja di kantor itu semua muda.**

1. Foto yang ...
2. Restoran yang ...
3. Pesan yang ...
4. Kopi yang ...
5. Olahraga yang ...
6. Kota yang ...
7. Surat yang ...
8. Penerbangan yang ...
9. Alat musik yang ...
10. Binatang yang ...

**Asking ‘which (one)?’**

To ask ‘which?’ or ‘which one?’ we can say yang mana?

- **Rumahmu yang mana?**
  
  Or:

  - **Yang mana rumahmu?**
    *Which one* is your house?

  - **Yang hijau.**
    The green one.

  - **Mau pakai baju yang mana?**
    *Which* shirt do you want to wear?

  - **Yang putih.**
    The white one.
LATIHAN 3

Work in pairs for this exercise. Below are five questions with Yang mana bukan ...? (Which one is not ...?). Provide a choice of five answers to each question, then ask your friend to choose the correct answer.

Example:

Yang mana bukan nama anggota tubuh?
Which one is not the name of a body part?

a mata
b kelapa
c perut
d mulut
e punggung

Answer: kelapa (coconut)

1 Yang mana bukan nama orang laki-laki?
2 Yang mana bukan binatang berekor?
3 Yang mana bukan nama jenis anjing?
4 Yang mana bukan nama makanan?
5 Yang mana bukan nama alat musik?

Summary

- Yang can mean 'the one', replacing the word for a person or thing.
- Yang can also be used to mean 'who(m)' or 'which' in the sense of 'the person who(m) ...' or 'the thing which ...'.
- Yang mana: is used to ask questions meaning 'which one'.
Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

Traditionally, a verb is defined as a ‘doing word’ or ‘action word’. While this definition may be applicable to many verbs, it is inaccurate for some others, because verbs can also refer to states or conditions. The verb berhenti (stop) in Indonesian, for example, means ‘to be in a stationary position’, so there is no action as such.

In Indonesian, we need to distinguish between intransitive and transitive verbs, according to whether the verb requires only one or more than one noun to accompany it to make sense when we use it in a sentence.

**Intransitive verbs**

An intransitive verb is a verb that needs only one noun (or noun phrase) to accompany it in a sentence. We refer to this noun (phrase) as the subject. Duduk (sit) and berlari (run) are examples of intransitive verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>INTRANSITIVE VERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anto</td>
<td>duduk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anto</td>
<td>sits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nenek</td>
<td>berjalan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandmother</td>
<td>walks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adik saya</td>
<td>menangis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My younger sibling</td>
<td>cries.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In a sentence you can add something other than a noun after the intransitive verb, such as a prepositional phrase (a preposition followed by a noun) or a manner adverb (a word placed after a verb that tells us the manner in which an action is done).
Anto duduk di kursi.
Anto sits on the chair.
Nenek berjalan ke pasar.
Grandmother walks to market.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>INTRANSITIVE VERB</th>
<th>PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anto</td>
<td>duduk</td>
<td>di kursi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anto</td>
<td>sits</td>
<td>on the chair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nenek</td>
<td>berjalan</td>
<td>ke pasar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandmother</td>
<td>walks</td>
<td>to market.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>INTRANSITIVE VERB</th>
<th>MANNER ADVERB</th>
<th>PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ani</td>
<td>menangis</td>
<td>keras.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ani</td>
<td>cries</td>
<td>loudly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tono</td>
<td>tidur</td>
<td>lelap.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tono</td>
<td>sleeps</td>
<td>soundly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can also make the sentences more complex by combining a manner adverb with a prepositional phrase.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>INTRANSITIVE VERB</th>
<th>MANNER ADVERB</th>
<th>PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tono</td>
<td>tidur</td>
<td>lelap</td>
<td>di kursi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tono</td>
<td>sleeps</td>
<td>soundly</td>
<td>on the chair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nenek</td>
<td>berjalan</td>
<td>cepat</td>
<td>ke pasar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandmother</td>
<td>walks</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>to market.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Intransitive verbs take different forms. Some have no affix, some have the ber- prefix, some have the meN- prefix and some have the ter-prefix. The tables below list only some of the intransitive verbs in each of these groups. The capital letter N in the prefix meN- indicates the sound change that occurs when the prefix is attached to a base word (see Chapter 11).

Simple intransitive verbs (no affix)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INTRANSITIVE VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>datang</td>
<td>to come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duduk</td>
<td>to sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hidup</td>
<td>to live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingat</td>
<td>to remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jatuh</td>
<td>to fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keluar</td>
<td>to exit, go out of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lulus</td>
<td>to pass (an exam) or test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lupa</td>
<td>to forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mandi</td>
<td>to bathe oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masuk</td>
<td>to enter, go into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulai</td>
<td>to start, begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>percaya</td>
<td>to believe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pergi</td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pindah</td>
<td>to move from one place to another</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs 51
### INTRANSITIVE VERB | ENGLISH MEANING
---|---
pulang | to go home
selesai | to finish
singgah | to stop over
tahu | to know
terbang | to fly
tiba | to arrive
tidur | to sleep
tinggal | to stay, live (reside)

**Intransitive verbs with ber-**
*(For other examples, see Chapter 10.)*

| BASE WORD | INTRANSITIVE VERB | ENGLISH MEANING |
---|---|---|
ajar | belajar | to learn, study
angkat | berangkat | to leave, depart
bahasa | berbahasa | to use a language
baring | berbaring | to lie down
belanja | berbelanja | to go shopping
bicara | berbicara | to speak
buat | berbuat | to do, commit
cakap | berbicapa | to chat
diri | berdiri | to stand
gurau | bergurau | to joke around
hati | berhati-hati | to take care
henti | berhenti | to stop (be stationary)
hias | berhias | to groom oneself
istirahat | beristirahat | to take a rest
jalan | berjalan | to walk
kembang | berkembang | to develop
kerja | bekerja | to work
kuasa | berkuasa | to have the authority
kumpul | berkumpul | to gather
lari | berlari | to run
libur | berlibur | to go on a holiday
main | bermain | to play
nyanyi | bernyanyi | to sing
pegang | berpegang | to hold on to
perang | berperang | to engage in a war
renang | berenang | to swim
selancar | berselancar | to surf
sembahyang | bersembahyang | to pray
tandang | bertandang | to visit someone
temu | bertemu | to meet
ubah | berubah | to change
In the verbs belajar, berenang and bekerja the 'r' in the prefix ber- is dropped. In bekerja and berenang it is dropped altogether, whereas in belajar it is replaced by 'l'.

**Intransitive verbs with meN-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>INTRANSITIVE VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bual</td>
<td>membual</td>
<td>to boast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cangkul</td>
<td>mencangkul</td>
<td>to hoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dengkur</td>
<td>mendengkur</td>
<td>to snore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inap</td>
<td>menginap</td>
<td>to stay the night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lompat</td>
<td>melompat</td>
<td>to jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nyanyi</td>
<td>menyanyi</td>
<td>to sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rangkak</td>
<td>merangkak</td>
<td>to crawl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rokok</td>
<td>merokok</td>
<td>to smoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tangis</td>
<td>menangis</td>
<td>to cry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tari</td>
<td>menari</td>
<td>to dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tinggal</td>
<td>meninggal</td>
<td>to die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uap</td>
<td>menguap</td>
<td>to yawn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Intransitive verbs with ter-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>INTRANSITIVE VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>senyum</td>
<td>tersenyum</td>
<td>to smile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tawa</td>
<td>tertawa</td>
<td>to laugh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 1

Write a caption in Indonesian for each of the following pictures using the intransitive verbs listed in the preceding tables.
Some intransitive verbs can take either the ber- or the meN- prefix with no difference in meaning.

bernyanyi/menyanyi   to sing
berbekas/membekas    to leave a mark or trace

Some other intransitive verbs take what are sometimes called pseudo-objects (nouns that look like objects, but are not perceived as being affected by the action)—see section 9.2.

bermain gitar        to play the guitar
bertepuk tangan     to clap (one’s) hands
bersepatu roda      to roller-skate

In these cases, we treat the verb and the following word as constituting one activity. In the previous examples, the words gitar, tangan and roda are considered as part of the verbs bermain, bertepuk and bersepatu respectively.

Transitive verbs

A transitive verb requires more than one noun or noun phrase for it to occur in a sentence. One of the nouns or noun phrases serves as the subject (as in intransitive verbs), while the other noun or noun phrase serves as object. Because the subject is typically the instigator of an action, we also refer to it as the actor. The object, on the other hand, is the person or thing that is affected by that action. We also refer to it as the patient.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT (ACTOR)</th>
<th>TRANSITIVE VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT (PATIENT)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kakak</td>
<td>membaca</td>
<td>surat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Older sibling</td>
<td>reads</td>
<td>the letter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ibu</td>
<td>membawa</td>
<td>keranjang.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother</td>
<td>carries</td>
<td>the basket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pak Harun</td>
<td>membuka</td>
<td>pintu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Harun</td>
<td>opens</td>
<td>the door.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Many transitive verbs have the meN- prefix.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>TRANSITIVE VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ajak</td>
<td>mengajak</td>
<td>to invite someone to do something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ajar</td>
<td>mengajar</td>
<td>to teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angkat</td>
<td>mengangkat</td>
<td>to lift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antar</td>
<td>mengantar</td>
<td>to take someone/something somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atur</td>
<td>mengatur</td>
<td>to arrange, organise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baca</td>
<td>membaca</td>
<td>to read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bahas</td>
<td>membahas</td>
<td>to discuss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bakar</td>
<td>membakar</td>
<td>to burn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bantah</td>
<td>membantah</td>
<td>to deny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bawa</td>
<td>membawa</td>
<td>to carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bayar</td>
<td>membayar</td>
<td>to pay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bela</td>
<td>membelah</td>
<td>to defend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beri</td>
<td>memberi</td>
<td>to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beritahu</td>
<td>memberitahu</td>
<td>to inform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buka</td>
<td>membuka</td>
<td>to open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cari</td>
<td>mencari</td>
<td>to search, look for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuci</td>
<td>mencuci</td>
<td>to wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>culik</td>
<td>menculik</td>
<td>to kidnap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curi</td>
<td>mencuri</td>
<td>to steal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daki</td>
<td>mendaki</td>
<td>to climb (a mountain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dapat</td>
<td>mendapat</td>
<td>to get, obtain, gain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dukung</td>
<td>mendukung</td>
<td>to support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gali</td>
<td>menggali</td>
<td>to dig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ganggu</td>
<td>mengganggu</td>
<td>to disturb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ganti</td>
<td>mengganti</td>
<td>to replace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hias</td>
<td>menghias</td>
<td>to decorate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intip</td>
<td>mengintip</td>
<td>to peep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isi</td>
<td>mengisi</td>
<td>to fill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaga</td>
<td>menjaga</td>
<td>to take care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jahit</td>
<td>menjahit</td>
<td>to sew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jawab</td>
<td>menjawab</td>
<td>to reply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jemput</td>
<td>menjemput</td>
<td>to pick someone up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jual</td>
<td>menjual</td>
<td>to sell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lihat</td>
<td>melihat</td>
<td>to see, look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masak</td>
<td>memasak</td>
<td>to cook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulai</td>
<td>memulai</td>
<td>to begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pakai</td>
<td>memakai</td>
<td>to wear, use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panggil</td>
<td>memanggil</td>
<td>to call, summon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panjat</td>
<td>memanjat</td>
<td>to climb (a tree)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BASE WORD</td>
<td>TRANSITIVE VERB</td>
<td>ENGLISH MEANING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pasang</td>
<td>memasang</td>
<td>to set up, install</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>periksa</td>
<td>memeriksa</td>
<td>to check, inspect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pesan</td>
<td>memesan</td>
<td>to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pilih</td>
<td>memilih</td>
<td>to choose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinang</td>
<td>meminang</td>
<td>to propose (marriage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinta</td>
<td>meminta</td>
<td>to ask for something, request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rusak</td>
<td>merusak</td>
<td>to damage intentionally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salin</td>
<td>menyalin</td>
<td>to copy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapu</td>
<td>menyapu</td>
<td>to sweep (floor, yard)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sewa</td>
<td>menyewa</td>
<td>to rent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simpan</td>
<td>menyimpan</td>
<td>to store, keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siram</td>
<td>menyiram</td>
<td>to water, spray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tangkap</td>
<td>menangkap</td>
<td>to catch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tarik</td>
<td>menarik</td>
<td>to pull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tawar</td>
<td>menawar</td>
<td>to bargain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telpon</td>
<td>menelpon</td>
<td>to telephone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tonton</td>
<td>menonton</td>
<td>to watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tunggu</td>
<td>menunggu</td>
<td>to walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tunjuk</td>
<td>menunjuk</td>
<td>to point, choose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tutup</td>
<td>menutup</td>
<td>to close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulang</td>
<td>mengulang</td>
<td>to repeat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undang</td>
<td>mengundang</td>
<td>to invite (for example, to a party)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urus</td>
<td>mengurus</td>
<td>to organise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

Many of the transitive verbs listed in the table above can also function as intransitive verbs when they are used without an object. *Memberi* (to give) is a good example.

Intransitive:

*Dia suka memberi.*
He/she likes giving.

Transitive:

*Dia suka memberi uang.*
He/she likes giving out money.

**LATIHAN 2**

The following pictures illustrate people doing things. Write a caption in Indonesian for each picture using a transitive verb.
As we have seen, what distinguishes an intransitive verb from a transitive verb is primarily the number of noun or noun phrases that occur with it in a sentence. Often, however, we find that an intransitive verb can be transformed into a transitive verb using certain mechanisms. Ways in which we can do this are discussed below.

**Adding an object**

The verb *membaca* (to read) can be used as an intransitive verb or as a transitive verb without changing its form. It is the addition of an object that makes it transitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>INTRANSITIVE VERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mereka</td>
<td>membaca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>read.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibu</td>
<td>makan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother</td>
<td>eats.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adding the suffix -kan or -i
Some intransitive verbs can be transformed into transitive verbs by either changing the affixation from ber- to meN-kan or meN-i or by adding some affixes when there are none. When we do this, the meaning of the verbs sometimes stays the same and sometimes changes.

Note
Here is how you can tell whether the verb in a sentence is transitive or intransitive. Intransitive verbs can be followed directly by a preposition (such as di or dengan). Transitive verbs must be followed directly by an object; there cannot be a preposition intercepting between the verb and the object.

Notice the transformation below from intransitive (verb + preposition) to transitive (verb with meN- prefix and either suffix -kan or -i).

Intransitive: Rita cinta kepada Faisal.
Rita loves Faisal. (Literally ‘loves to’)

Transitive: Rita mencintai Faisal.
Rita loves Faisal.

Intransitive: Saya suka akan film itu.
I like that film. (Literally ‘like at’)

Transitive: Saya menyukai film itu.
I like that film.

Intransitive: Andi marah kepada temannya.
Andi is angry with his friend.
Transitive: Andi memarahi temannya.
Andi scolded his friend.

Intransitive: Mereka berkumpul di aula.
They gathered in the hall.

Transitive: Guru mengumpulkan murid-murid di aula.
The teacher gathered the students in the hall.

LATIHAN 3
The pictures below illustrate people doing something. Write a caption in Indonesian for each picture using an intransitive verb. Next, rewrite the captions, transforming each intransitive verb into a transitive verb by adding an object.

LATIHAN 4
The following verbs are from the tables of transitive and intransitive verbs that you saw earlier in this chapter. Copy and complete the following table to make sentences. The left-hand column is for the subject of the sentence, while the other columns are for the object (if there is one), the prepositional phrase (indicating location) and for any other information that you wish to add to the sentence.
LATIHAN 5

Work in pairs to do this exercise.
- Person A: Act out five verbs from the verb tables in this chapter and ask your friend: Saya sedang apa? (What am I doing?)
- Person B: Answer the question in a sentence beginning with: Kamu sedang ... (You are ...)

You need to identify whether the verb required is intransitive or transitive. If the verb is intransitive, you can add a prepositional phrase or something else. If the verb is transitive, you need to add an object, followed by some other information if you wish.

Examples:

A: Saya sedang apa?
B: Kamu sedang merokok.

A: Saya sedang apa?
B: Kamu sedang tidur di meja.

Take turns in asking and answering questions.

Summary

- Intransitive verbs take a subject but no object → [Subject – Verb].
- Transitive verbs take a subject and an object → [Subject – Verb – Object].
- Forms of intransitive verbs: affix-less, [ber+ base word], [meN+ base word].
- Forms of transitive verbs: [meN+ base word], [meN+ -kan], [meN+ -i].
- Only intransitive verbs can be followed directly by a preposition, such as di, ke, dengen or akan. Transitive verbs have to be followed directly by an object.
Ber-

Ber- is often called a verbal prefix. This is because most of the words with this prefix are verbs, even though they may be derived from nouns, verbs or other sources. We saw in Chapter 9 that ber- verbs are intransitive; that is, they occur with only one noun (or noun phrase) in a sentence and this noun is the subject of the sentence.

In this chapter we look at the different meanings of ber- words:
- Ber- verbs and not verbs
- Ber-an

### To have what the base word indicates

Ber- in this group roughly means 'to have'. However, when we translate it into English, we may use the ending 'ed', or use 'of' or 'have'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
<th>Ber- Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anak</td>
<td>child</td>
<td>beranak</td>
<td>to have a child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jenggot</td>
<td>beard</td>
<td>berjenggot</td>
<td>to have a beard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kaki</td>
<td>foot</td>
<td>berkaki</td>
<td>to have feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kulit</td>
<td>skin</td>
<td>berkulit</td>
<td>to have skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kumis</td>
<td>moustache</td>
<td>berkumis</td>
<td>to have a moustache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nama</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>bemama</td>
<td>to have the name (be called)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rambut</td>
<td>hair</td>
<td>berambut</td>
<td>to have hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uang</td>
<td>money</td>
<td>beruang</td>
<td>to have money (be wealthy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umur</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>berumur</td>
<td>to have age (be a certain age)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

berkaki empat: four-legged
berumur lima tahun: be five years of age
berkumis: have a moustache
**Did you know?**
The word *beruang* can mean three different things, depending on the base word from which it is derived.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>BER- WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uang</td>
<td>money</td>
<td>ber + uang</td>
<td>to have money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruang</td>
<td>room</td>
<td>be(r) + ruang</td>
<td>to have room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beruang</td>
<td>bear (animal)</td>
<td>beruang</td>
<td>bear (the animal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To use or wear**

This group includes words pertaining to things we wear (items of clothing) or use (including some vehicles, such as cars and bikes).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>BER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baju</td>
<td>shirt, attire</td>
<td>berbaju</td>
<td>to wear (attire)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jins</td>
<td>jeans</td>
<td>berjins</td>
<td>to wear jeans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kacamata</td>
<td>glasses</td>
<td>berkacamata</td>
<td>to wear glasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobil</td>
<td>car</td>
<td>bermobil</td>
<td>to go by car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepatu</td>
<td>shoe</td>
<td>bersepatu</td>
<td>to wear shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepeda</td>
<td>bicycle</td>
<td>bersepeda</td>
<td>to go by bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepeda motor</td>
<td>motorbike</td>
<td>bersepeda motor</td>
<td>to go by motorbike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singlet</td>
<td>singlet</td>
<td>bersinglet</td>
<td>to wear a singlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tongkat</td>
<td>walking stick</td>
<td>bertongkat</td>
<td>to use a walking stick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>topi</td>
<td>hat</td>
<td>bertopi</td>
<td>to wear a hat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LATIHAN 1**

Complete the following sentences with *ber-* words.

1. Benarkah bahwa orang Indonesia *mewah* coklat?
2. Ibu saya *expensive* 41 tahun.
4. Mereka keluarga yang *very expensive* Rumah mereka bersepeda.
5. Lina sangat suka *very expensive* Levi's ke mana-mana.

**LATIHAN 2**

Write a short caption in Indonesian for each of the following pictures using *ber-* words. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.
The following verbs represent only a few of the ber- verbs. For more examples, refer to Chapter 9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>BER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cerita</td>
<td>story</td>
<td>bercerita</td>
<td>to tell a story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cermin</td>
<td>mirror</td>
<td>bercermin</td>
<td>to look at oneself in the mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerak</td>
<td>motion</td>
<td>bergerak</td>
<td>to move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latih</td>
<td>exercise, train</td>
<td>berlatih</td>
<td>to train (physical exercise), to do exercise (not physical, such as music, maths)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libur</td>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>berlibur</td>
<td>to take a vacation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perang</td>
<td>war</td>
<td>berperang</td>
<td>to engage in a war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siul</td>
<td>whistle</td>
<td>bersiul</td>
<td>to whistle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tambah</td>
<td>add, increase</td>
<td>bertambah</td>
<td>to increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tandang</td>
<td>visit</td>
<td>bertandang</td>
<td>to visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temu</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>bertemu</td>
<td>to meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tugas</td>
<td>task, duty</td>
<td>bertugas</td>
<td>to have a task/duty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

Formal and informal forms

Sometimes words with the ber- prefix have the same meaning as those that do not have the ber- prefix. When speaking, Indonesians use either word. Words with the ber- prefix are more formal and this is the correct form to use when you write in Indonesian.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>BER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>belanja</td>
<td>to shop</td>
<td>berbelanja</td>
<td>to shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dagang</td>
<td>to do business, sell</td>
<td>berdagang</td>
<td>to do business, sell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kumpul</td>
<td>to gather</td>
<td>berkumpul</td>
<td>to gather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main</td>
<td>to play</td>
<td>bermain</td>
<td>to play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nyanyi</td>
<td>to sing</td>
<td>bernyanyi</td>
<td>to sing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling
When attached to certain base words, the 'r' in ber- is either replaced by another letter or, if the base word begins with 'r', it is dropped altogether. Throughout the rest of this chapter, an asterisk (*) is used to indicate words to which the spelling change applies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>BER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ajar</td>
<td>to teach</td>
<td>*belajar</td>
<td>to learn, study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kerja</td>
<td>to work</td>
<td>*bekerja</td>
<td>to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>renang</td>
<td>to swim</td>
<td>*berenang</td>
<td>to swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runding</td>
<td>to negotiate</td>
<td>*berunding</td>
<td>to negotiate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ber- + numeral**

When attached to a numeral, ber- means 'in + number'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>BER- WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lima</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>berlima</td>
<td>group of five people (Literally: in five)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dua</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>berdua</td>
<td>two people together (Literally: in two)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

However, note the following.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>BER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>satu</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>bersatu</td>
<td>to unite (to be one)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ber-an**

When the suffix -an is attached to a ber- verb, the verb will indicate either 'reciprocality' or 'irregularity of action or motion'.

---

64 A Student's Guide to Indonesian Grammar
**Reciprocality**

‘Reciprocality’ means that the verbs indicate mutual action or relationship between two or more people, animals or inanimate objects (for example, vehicles).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>BER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bentur</td>
<td>to knock, hit</td>
<td>berbenturan</td>
<td>to knock or hit each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cium</td>
<td>to kiss</td>
<td>berciuman</td>
<td>to be kissing (two people)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dekat</td>
<td>near</td>
<td>berdekan</td>
<td>to be in close proximity to each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dua</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>berduaan</td>
<td>to be alone with a partner (Literally: in two)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hadap</td>
<td>face</td>
<td>berhadapan</td>
<td>to face each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jabat</td>
<td>to shake hand</td>
<td>berjabatan( tangan)</td>
<td>to shake hands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jauh</td>
<td>far</td>
<td>berjauhan</td>
<td>to be distant from each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kenal</td>
<td>to know</td>
<td>berkenalan</td>
<td>to introduce oneself to someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musuh</td>
<td>enemy</td>
<td>bermusuh</td>
<td>to be each other's enemy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pandang</td>
<td>gaze, look</td>
<td>berpandangan</td>
<td>to gaze/look at each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papas</td>
<td>to come across</td>
<td>berpapasan</td>
<td>to meet or bump into someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pegang</td>
<td>to hold</td>
<td>berpegangan(tangan)</td>
<td>to hold hands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sebelah</td>
<td>side</td>
<td>bersebelahan</td>
<td>to be side by side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seberang</td>
<td>across</td>
<td>berseberangan</td>
<td>to be across from each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tabrak</td>
<td>to hit, collide</td>
<td>bertabrakan</td>
<td>to collide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Irregular action or motion**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>BER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>datang</td>
<td>to come</td>
<td>berdatangan</td>
<td>to arrive one after another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kejar</td>
<td>to chase</td>
<td>berkejaran</td>
<td>to chase each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lari</td>
<td>to run</td>
<td>berlarian</td>
<td>to run everywhere (to and fro)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tebar</td>
<td>to scatter</td>
<td>bertebaran</td>
<td>to be scattered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terbang</td>
<td>to fly</td>
<td>*beterbangan</td>
<td>to fly everywhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Waktu berkenalan, orang Indonesia biasanya berjabatan tangan.  
When introducing themselves, Indonesians usually shake hands.

Mobil itu bertabrakan dengan truk.  
That car collided with a truck.

Tamu-tamu mulai berdatangan ke pesta itu.  
Guests are starting to arrive at that party.
LATIHAN 3

Working in pairs, choose one of the following sentences to act out in front of the class. The other students in the class have to guess what you are doing without looking at the ber-an verbs on the previous page. Include some conversation, if need be, to enable the class to guess, rather than just miming.

1. Anda berdua berdiri berseberangan kemudian berpandangan.
2. Anda berdua duduk berjauhan di kelas karena anda bermusuhan.
3. Anda berdua baru berkenalan, dan setelah berbicara beberapa menit, anda mengetahui bahwa ternyata anda bertetangga.
4. Ketika mobil dan sepeda motor anda bertabrakan, orang-orang berdatangan untuk melihat apa yang terjadi.
5. Anda berdua berpapasan di jalan, lalu berjabatan tangan karena sudah lama tidak bertemu.

Reduplicated ber-

When ber- is reduplicated, the word may indicate repeated or extended action, or action that takes place over an extended period of time. Reduplicated ber- may also indicate plural.

Repeated or extended action, or action over an extended time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REDUPLICATED BER- WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>berbincang-bincang</td>
<td>to talk, discuss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bercakap-cakap</td>
<td>to talk, chat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berjalan-jalan</td>
<td>to walk at leisure, stroll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berjinkkrak-jinkkrak</td>
<td>to jump up and down in excitement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berputar-putar</td>
<td>to go round and round</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Handy expression

A useful common expression is berlama-lama (purposely take time in doing something).

Jangan berlama-lama di sana ya.
Don’t stay too long there, will you?

Lisa berlama-lama mandi karena airnya hangat.
Lisa is taking her time showering since the water is warm.
Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REDUPLICATED BER- WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>berbeda-beda</td>
<td>different kinds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bermacam-macam</td>
<td>various kinds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*beratus-ratus</td>
<td>hundreds of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*beribu-ribu</td>
<td>thousands of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 4

Describe one of the following animals in Indonesian using ber- verbs. You should describe the animal’s skin colour, eyes, mouth, teeth, whether it is two-legged or four-legged and so on. The other students in the class have to guess what animal it is.

1. burung flamingo (flamingo)
2. ikan hiu (shark)
3. kodok/katak (frog)
4. kuda nil (hippopotamus)
5. kuda zebra (zebra)
6. kura-kura (turtle)

LATIHAN 5

On 28 October 1928, during the Youth Congress, the Indonesian Youth made a pledge that became known as Sumpah Pemuda (Youth Pledge). This pledge is a formal declaration of the existence of the Indonesian nation and the adoption of a national language (originally Malay). Hari Sumpah Pemuda (Youth Pledge Day) is annually commemorated on 28 October as a remembrance of this occasion.

Translate the pledge into English.

Sumpah Pemuda
Kami, putra-putri Indonesia mengaku:
Bertanah air satu, Tanah Air Indonesia
Berbangsa satu, Bangsa Indonesia
Berbahasa satu, Bahasa Indonesia

Summary

- Ber- can mean to have, to use or wear, or to do what the base word indicates.
- Ber- + numeral means 'in + number'.
- Ber-an indicates reciprocality or irregularity of action or motion.
- Reduplicated ber- indicates repeated action or action over an extended time, or plural.
In this chapter we will learn more about MeN- words, which can be verbs or adjectives.

We saw in Chapter 9 that MeN- verbs can be either transitive (with an object following the verb) or intransitive (with no object following the verb).

Transitive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Prepositional phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mereka</td>
<td>membeli</td>
<td>pakaian</td>
<td>di toko murah itu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>in that cheap shop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Intransitive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Prepositional phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anita</td>
<td>menyanyi</td>
<td>di kamar mandi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When we affix MeN- to a base word, often a sound change occurs; that is, the sound of the initial letter of the base word is changed. If the base word begins with certain letters, there is no change. The capital letter N in MeN- is used to indicate this change.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INITIAL LETTER OF BASE WORD</th>
<th>EXAMPLE OF BASE WORD</th>
<th>PREFIX</th>
<th>EXAMPLE OF MEN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>lihat</td>
<td>me-</td>
<td>melihat</td>
<td>to see, look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>maki</td>
<td>memaki</td>
<td>to swear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>nanti</td>
<td>menanti</td>
<td>to wait</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ng</td>
<td>ngangga</td>
<td>menganga</td>
<td>to be agape</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ny</td>
<td>nyanyi</td>
<td>menyanyi</td>
<td>to sing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>raba</td>
<td>meraba</td>
<td>to touch, feel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>yakin</td>
<td>meyakinkan</td>
<td>to convince</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>warna</td>
<td>mewarnai</td>
<td>to colour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sound changes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial Letter of Base Word</th>
<th>Example of Base Word</th>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Example of Men- Verb</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>bisu</td>
<td>mem-</td>
<td>membisu</td>
<td>to stay mute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>fitnah</td>
<td>mem-</td>
<td>memfitnah</td>
<td>to slander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>vonis</td>
<td>mem-</td>
<td>memvonis</td>
<td>to sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*p</td>
<td>pukul</td>
<td>mem-</td>
<td>mempukul</td>
<td>to hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>dengkur</td>
<td>men-</td>
<td>mendengkur</td>
<td>to snore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>jajah</td>
<td>men-</td>
<td>menjajah</td>
<td>to colonise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>cari</td>
<td>men-</td>
<td>mencari</td>
<td>to look for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*t</td>
<td>tari</td>
<td>men-</td>
<td>menari</td>
<td>to dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>atur</td>
<td>meng-</td>
<td>mengatur</td>
<td>to organise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>erang</td>
<td>meng-</td>
<td>mengerang</td>
<td>to moan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ikat</td>
<td>meng-</td>
<td>mengikat</td>
<td>to tie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>obrol</td>
<td>meng-</td>
<td>mengobrol</td>
<td>to chat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>ukur</td>
<td>meng-</td>
<td>mengukur</td>
<td>to measure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>garuk</td>
<td>meng-</td>
<td>menggaruk</td>
<td>to scratch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hukum</td>
<td>meng-</td>
<td>menghukum</td>
<td>to punish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*k</td>
<td>kejar</td>
<td>meng-</td>
<td>mengejar</td>
<td>to chase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*s</td>
<td>setir</td>
<td>meny-</td>
<td>menyetir</td>
<td>to drive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
Initial sounds indicated by an asterisk (*) in the above are dropped when prefixed by meN-.

**LATIHAN 1**
Form meN- words by applying the above rules to each of the following base words. Then find the meaning in English of each meN- word by consulting your dictionary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base Word</th>
<th>Men- Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 kira</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 masak</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 potong</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 rusak</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 buka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 gambar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 tulis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 bawa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 sesal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 hafal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 gapai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 lotot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Working in pairs, take turns to do the following.

1. Practise pronouncing the base words and the meN- words from Latihan 1.
2. Act out each of the verbs while your partner guesses the meaning.

### Transitive meN- verbs

In transitive verbs, meN- indicates active voice (also called subject-focus). That is, it tells us that the focus of the sentence is on the actor, who is also the subject of the sentence.

MeN- contrasts with the di- prefix in that di- indicates passive voice (also called object-focus), where the focus is on the object of the sentence. This contrast is discussed in more detail in Chapter 19.

### MeN- verbs with noun base

Some transitive meN- verbs come from nouns. The following verbs mean 'do something associated with the base word' or 'using what is indicated by the base word'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>borgol</td>
<td>handcuff</td>
<td>memborgol</td>
<td>to handcuff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat</td>
<td>paint</td>
<td>mencat,</td>
<td>to paint (for example, mengcat, the wall)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parut</td>
<td>grater</td>
<td>memarut</td>
<td>to grate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapu</td>
<td>broom</td>
<td>menyapu</td>
<td>to sweep (for example, menyemir, shoes, hair, but not furniture)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semir</td>
<td>polish</td>
<td>menyemir</td>
<td>to polish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sisir</td>
<td>comb</td>
<td>menyisir</td>
<td>to comb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MeN- verbs with verbal base

Other meN- verbs have a verbal base and, as mentioned in Chapter 10, the presence of the prefix is required to make a well-formed verb.
**Intransitive meN- verbs**

With intransitive verbs, the prefix meN- indicates different meanings.

**Formation of base word**

As with transitive verbs, the meN- prefix is needed in some intransitive verbs for the base word to be well formed or make sense. In some cases, the base word cannot occur without it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>didih</td>
<td>to boil</td>
<td>mendidih</td>
<td>to boil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erti</td>
<td>to understand</td>
<td>mengerti</td>
<td>to understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inap</td>
<td>to stay the night (for example, at a friend's house or at a hotel)</td>
<td>menginap</td>
<td>to stay the night (for example, at a friend's house or at a hotel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ungsi</td>
<td>to flee (for example, as refugees)</td>
<td>mengungsi</td>
<td>to flee (for example, as refugees)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To do something associated with the base word**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ludah</td>
<td>spit</td>
<td>meludah</td>
<td>to spit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rokok</td>
<td>cigarette</td>
<td>merokok</td>
<td>to smoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>susu</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td>menyusu</td>
<td>to suckle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To be like what the base word indicates**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gunung</td>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>menggunung</td>
<td>to pile up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puncak</td>
<td>peak</td>
<td>memuncak</td>
<td>to peak, culminate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To go to where the base word indicates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>darat</td>
<td>land</td>
<td>mendarat</td>
<td>to go to land, to land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dekat</td>
<td>near</td>
<td>mendekat</td>
<td>to move close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jauh</td>
<td>far</td>
<td>menjauh</td>
<td>to move away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seberang</td>
<td>across</td>
<td>menyeberang</td>
<td>to go to the other side, to cross</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sound words (onomatopoeia)
These are words that resemble the noise made by either animals or humans.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aum</td>
<td>roar</td>
<td>mengaum</td>
<td>to roar (for example, tigers)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cicit</td>
<td>squeak</td>
<td>mencicit</td>
<td>to squeak (for example, mice)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dengkur</td>
<td>snore</td>
<td>mendengkur</td>
<td>to snore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embik</td>
<td>bleat</td>
<td>mengembik</td>
<td>to bleat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eong</td>
<td>miaow</td>
<td>mengeong</td>
<td>to miaow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gonggong</td>
<td>bark</td>
<td>menggonggong</td>
<td>to bark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keduh</td>
<td>sigh</td>
<td>mengeluh</td>
<td>to sigh, complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raung</td>
<td>roar, wail</td>
<td>merzung</td>
<td>to roar, wail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ringkik</td>
<td>neigh</td>
<td>meringkik</td>
<td>to neigh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To become what the base word indicates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bengkak</td>
<td>swollen</td>
<td>membengkak</td>
<td>to swell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busuk</td>
<td>rotten</td>
<td>membusuk</td>
<td>to rot, go off (for example, food)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cair</td>
<td>liquid</td>
<td>mencair</td>
<td>to melt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kering</td>
<td>dry</td>
<td>mengering</td>
<td>to dry up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuning</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>menguning</td>
<td>to become yellow → ripen (for example, rice plants)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>putih</td>
<td>white</td>
<td>memutih</td>
<td>to become white → greying (for example, hair)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tebal</td>
<td>thick</td>
<td>mencbal</td>
<td>to thicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tipis</td>
<td>thin</td>
<td>menipis</td>
<td>to thin out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some words having this meaning can also be used in a metaphorical sense.
Interestingly, some meN- words are adjectives rather than verbs. For example, the following meN- words mean 'in the shape indicated by the base word'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN- ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lingkar</td>
<td>circle</td>
<td>melingkar</td>
<td>curled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panjang</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>memanjang</td>
<td>lengthwise, elongated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Another example is the word menarik, which comes from the verb tarik (pull). The meaning of the adjective menarik is derived from the metaphorical sense of 'pull'; something that pulls or attracts your attention is something interesting or attractive.

| menarik (verb) | to pull |
| menarik (adjective) | interesting, attractive |

In very few cases, meN- verbs mean the same as their corresponding ber- verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEN- VERB</th>
<th>BER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>membekas</td>
<td>berbekas</td>
<td>to leave a mark or trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menyanyi</td>
<td>bernyanyi</td>
<td>to sing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LATIHAN 3**

Indicate whether the following sentences are transitive or intransitive. The verbs to which you should pay attention are underlined.

1. Polisi **memborong** tangan pencuri itu.
2. Bibi saya **mengeluh** tentang suaminya setiap hari.
3. Anjing tetangga saya selalu **menggonggong** pada malam hari.
4. Kami membantu **memarut** kelapa di dapur.
5. Pada musim panas danau itu **mengering**.
6 Presiden itu menginap di hotel bintang lima.
7 Darahnya mendidih ketika mendengar berita itu.
8 Ketika melihat saya dia menjaub.
9 Kakak saya mencat dinding kamarnya kemarin.
10 Mereka menyemir sepatu untuk mendapatkan uang.

LATIHAN 4
Write the following sentences in Indonesian. You will find the underlined words in this chapter. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.
1. The snake curled up on the tree.
2. My mother's story is very interesting.
3. The food is starting to go off.
4. My father's hair is greying.
5. Goats and sheep bleat.
7. The plane landed in Jakarta at 10.30 a.m.
8. They fled to a safer place.
9. She combs her daughter's hair every morning.
10. I don't understand the question.

LATIHAN 5
Here are some pictures of animals. Find meN- verbs to describe their sounds.
MeN- verbs can be transitive or intransitive.
MeN- verbs can have a noun base or a verbal base.
In many cases, the MeN- prefix is required for the base word to be well-formed or to make sense; in some cases, the base word cannot occur by itself.
Some MeN- words are adjectives rather than verbs.
A few MeN- verbs mean the same as their corresponding be^ verbs.
The suffix -kan is often attached to meN- words to make them transitive. Of course, we can also have transitive verbs without the suffix -kan, as we saw in the previous chapters. When a prefix and a suffix are attached to the same base word, we call it a circumfix.

MeN-kan words are primarily verbs; a few are adjectives. They can be grouped according to the meaning that the affixation gives to the base word.

**Indicating the transitive**

In many cases, meN-kan merely indicates that the verbs are transitive. The affixation gives no other meaning except that its presence is required to make the verb well formed. For example, the verb melakukan (do, carry out or commit something) cannot occur without the prefix meN- and the suffix -kan. Similarly, the verb menganjurkan (suggest, advise) must have the affixes to make sense at all; anjur does not make sense by itself.

Other examples of -kan transitive verbs are listed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-kan verb</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>membandingkan</td>
<td>to compare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membayangkan</td>
<td>to imagine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membicarakkan</td>
<td>to talk about, discuss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memikirkan</td>
<td>to think about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mendengarkan</td>
<td>to listen to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menerangkan</td>
<td>to explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menerjemahkan</td>
<td>to translate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mengabaikan</td>
<td>to ignore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mengadakan</td>
<td>to do, hold an event (for example, a party, meeting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mengatakan</td>
<td>to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mengenakan</td>
<td>to wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mengerjakan</td>
<td>to do (for example, homework)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menjelaskan</td>
<td>to say bad things about someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menyalahkan</td>
<td>to accuse someone of wrongdoing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note
Sometimes we find two meN- verbs with the same base, but one has -kan while the other does not, and both are transitive. In these cases, the verbs have different meanings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN-kan VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meminjam</td>
<td>to borrow</td>
<td>meminjamkan</td>
<td>to lend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mendengar</td>
<td>to hear</td>
<td>mendengarkan</td>
<td>to listen to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menyewa</td>
<td>to rent, hire</td>
<td>menyewakan</td>
<td>to rent to someone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Causative
The second meaning of meN-kan is causative; that is, to cause something to be or become what the base word indicates. For example, the verb membersihkan comes from the base word bersih (clean). The verb can be translated literally as 'cause to become clean', but idiomatically as 'to clean'. Here are some other examples of causative meN-kan verbs. (Remember that all of these verbs are transitive.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN-kan VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>besar</td>
<td>big, large</td>
<td>membesarkan</td>
<td>to enlarge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dingin</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>mendinginkan</td>
<td>to chill or cool something down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duduk</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>mendudukkan</td>
<td>to seat someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halus</td>
<td>smooth</td>
<td>menghaluskan</td>
<td>to make smooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hidup</td>
<td>live, alive</td>
<td>menghidupkan</td>
<td>to turn on (example, light, television, car, stereo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hijau</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>menghijaukan</td>
<td>to revegetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jatuh</td>
<td>fall, drop</td>
<td>menjatuhkan</td>
<td>to drop something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kecil</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>mengecilkan</td>
<td>to turn down (for example, volume), alter something to become small (for example, pants, dress)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keluar</td>
<td>come/go out</td>
<td>mengeluarkan</td>
<td>to send or take somebody/something out (for example, of a bag or room), expel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masuk</td>
<td>go in, enter</td>
<td>memasukkan</td>
<td>to put into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mati</td>
<td>die, dead</td>
<td>mematikan</td>
<td>to turn off (for example, light, television, car, stereo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panas</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>memanaskan</td>
<td>to heat something up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rapi</td>
<td>neat, organised</td>
<td>merapikan</td>
<td>to tidy up (for example, bed, books)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sederhana</td>
<td>simple</td>
<td>menyederhanakan</td>
<td>to simplify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terbang</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>menerbangkan</td>
<td>to fly something, to pilot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tidur</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>menidurkan</td>
<td>to put to sleep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Complete each of the following sentences by selecting an appropriate word from the box. Each word may be used only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KOSAKATA</th>
<th>mengeluarkan</th>
<th>menidurkan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boneka</td>
<td>doll</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desain</td>
<td>design</td>
<td>mematikan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hutan</td>
<td>forest</td>
<td>menyederhanakan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mesin</td>
<td>engine</td>
<td>menjatuhkan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saku</td>
<td>pocket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sengaja</td>
<td>intentional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swasta</td>
<td>private, non-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>government</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Pak Budi __________ anaknya ke sekolah swasta di kota itu.
2. Pada jam 6 sore ibu __________ lampu di ruang tamu.
3. Tono sedang __________ tempat tidurnya.
4. Edi sedang __________ uang dari sakunya.
5. Bu Bejo akan __________ anaknya di kamar depan.
6. Ani __________ bonekanya di kursi rotan.
7. Dia dengan sengaja __________ botol kecap manis itu.
8. Kita harus __________ kembali hutan itu.
9. Mengapa dia tidak mau __________ mesin mobilnya?
10. Bisa anda __________ desain rumah itu?

**Benefactive**

The third meaning of meN-kan is benefactive; that is, it indicates that the action shown by the verb is done for the benefit of someone else (who is called the beneficiary).

The benefactive meN-kan often occurs in a sentence with two objects. The first object, which directly follows the verb, is called the primary object, while the second is called the secondary object. In sentences with meN-kan, the beneficiary appears as the primary object. The secondary object is usually referred to as the patient. (Remember that this is a grammatical term and does not mean the same as a patient at a hospital.) The patient is the thing that is affected by the action (e.g. being given or transferred). To help you remember which one is which, here is a simple definition of each of these terms:

- **Primary object**: Object that directly follows the verb.
- **Secondary object**: Object that follows the primary object.
- **Beneficiary**: Person who benefits from the action indicated by the verb. In meN-kan sentences, this is the primary object.
- **Patient**: Thing being affected by the action. In meN-kan sentences, this is the secondary object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ayah</th>
<th>membuatkan</th>
<th>kami</th>
<th>teh.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>Primary object</td>
<td>Secondary object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>Beneficiary</td>
<td>Patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Father</td>
<td></td>
<td>us</td>
<td>tea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The sets of examples below should further clarify the benefactive use of meN-kan. Both sentences in each set are transitive, but only the b examples are benefactive.

1 a Sita membuka pintu kamar.
Sita opened the bedroom door.

b Sita membukakan ibunya pintu kamar.
(Literally: Sita opened for her mother the door)
Sita opened the door for her mother.

2 a John menulis surat kepada temannya.
John wrote a letter to his friend.

b John menulis surat kepada temannya.
(Literally: John wrote for me a letter.)
John wrote a letter for me.

3 a Rina membuat kue coklat.
Rina made a chocolate cake.

b Rina membuat kue coklat.
(Literally: Rina made for mother a chocolate cake.)
Rina made a chocolate cake for mother.

The benefactive meN-kan does not, however, always have two objects. When the beneficiary is known or assumed, often it is not mentioned. For example, in the following exchange, the beneficiary is B, but the word kamu is not mentioned. The suffix -kan already indicates that the action is done for someone else.

A: Siapa yang membukakan pintu ketika kamu pulang tadi malam?
Who opened the door (for you) when you came home last night?

B: Bapak.
Father.

Mentioning the beneficiary (hence mentioning kamu twice), as shown below, is often unnecessary.

Siapa yang membukakan kamu pintu ketika kamu pulang tadi malam?

LATIHAN 2
The following are sets of verbs with the same base word. Write a sentence in Indonesian for each verb in the set: one simple transitive and the other benefactive, as shown above. For the benefactive sentences, you can choose to mention or not mention the beneficiary.

1 a mengambil (get)
b mengambilkan (get for someone)

2 a menutup (close, shut)
b menutupkan (close/shut for someone)
3. a membaca (read)
b membacakan (read for someone)
4. a membeli (buy)
b membelikan (buy for someone)
5. a memasak (cook)
b memasakkan (cook for someone)
6. a membawa (bring)
b membawakan (bring for someone)
7. a mencari (look for)
b mencarikan (look for something for someone)
8. a mencuci (wash)
b mencucikan (wash for someone)

**Optional -kan**

In some cases, verbs with the suffix -kan mean the same as those without the suffix. The suffix does not lend any additional meaning to these verbs, so we can use either form. Some of these verbs are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MÉN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MÉN-KAN VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>memberi</td>
<td>to give</td>
<td>memberikan</td>
<td>to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mendapat</td>
<td>to get, obtain</td>
<td>mendapatkan</td>
<td>to get, obtain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mengantar</td>
<td>to take/accompany</td>
<td>mengantarkan</td>
<td>to take/accompany</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| SÉN-
|---|

Kepala sekolah memberi(ken) penghargaan kepada murid itu.
The headmaster/headmistress gave an award to that student.

Ayahnya mendapat(ken) pekerjaan di Bandung.
Her father got a job in Bandung.

Mereka mengantar(ken) saya ke bandara.
They took me to the airport.

**Undifferentiated meN-kan and ber-**

In very few cases, meN-kan verbs are used in the same way as ber-verbs; that is, intransitively. One example is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MÉN-KAN VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>BER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mengatakan</td>
<td>to say</td>
<td>berkata</td>
<td>to say</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dia mengatakan/berkata bahwa dia akan datang ke pesta saya.
He/she said that he/she would come to my party.
Some verbs suffixed by -kan that have the same base have different meanings, depending on whether they have the prefix meN- or the prefix member-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEN-KAN OR MEMBER-KAN VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>melakukan</td>
<td>to do, carry out or commit something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memberlakukan</td>
<td>to put something into effect (for example, sanction, regulation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memberhentikan</td>
<td>to sack someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menghentikan</td>
<td>to stop something</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 3
Identify the meaning of meN-kan in the following sentences: simple transitive, causative or benefactive. Please note that sometimes a verb can be both simple transitive and causative, or both causative and benefactive.

1. Mereka sedang menggerakan apa?
2. Ira akan memanaskan susu di dapur.
3. Di mana temanmu akan menghentikan mobilnya?
4. Siapa yang membelikanmu kalkulator itu?
5. Sekolah kami akan mengadakan pertandingan sepak bola.
6. Rudi sedang membacakan temannya lirik lagu itu.
7. Mengapa kamu belum membersihkan mejamu?
8. Saya tidak suka menerjemahkan kalimat dari bahasa Indonesia ke bahasa Inggris.
9. Sally tidak mau mengecilkan radionya.
10. Mereka sedang membicarakan masalah lingkungan di ruangan itu.
11. Dia mengatakan apa kepada anda?

LATIHAN 4
Survey five people in your class to find out who does what at home. Write their names in the left column of a table like the one shown on the next page. For each subsequent column, you must ask each person 'Siapa yang ...?' and record his or her response in the appropriate space. Present your findings to the class.
Some meN-kan words can be adjectives as well as verbs. These are words primarily to do with emotion or state of mind.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>MEN-kan WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING AS VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING AS ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bingung</td>
<td>membingungkan</td>
<td>to confuse someone</td>
<td>confusing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gembira</td>
<td>menggembirakan</td>
<td>to make someone happy or pleased</td>
<td>pleasing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jengkel</td>
<td>menjengkelkan</td>
<td>to annoy someone</td>
<td>annoying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kecewa</td>
<td>mengecewakan</td>
<td>to disappoint someone</td>
<td>disappointing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lega</td>
<td>melegakan</td>
<td>to make someone</td>
<td>cause for relief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prihatin</td>
<td>memprihatinkan</td>
<td>to make someone</td>
<td>cause for concern,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ragu</td>
<td>meragukan</td>
<td>to doubt someone or</td>
<td>cause for doubt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedih</td>
<td>menyedihkan</td>
<td>to make someone sad</td>
<td>saddening, pitiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senang</td>
<td>menyenangkan</td>
<td>to make someone glad</td>
<td>pleasing, exciting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
A few men-kan words are either adjectives or verbs, not both.

- **menggiurkan** (adjective only): enticing, tempting
- **memarahkan** (causative verb only): to make someone angry, irritate
LATIHAN 5

Interview a classmate to find out about his or her likes and dislikes based on the following questions. First, translate these questions into Indonesian using 'Apa yang paling ... anda?'. Your classmate's answers should start with 'Yang paling ... saya adalah ...'.

1 What annoys you most?
2 What makes you happiest?
3 What confuses you most?
4 What concerns you most?
5 What saddens you most?

LATIHAN 6

Below are some habits or traits that we often find in people. Find a meN-kan adjective to describe what you think of such habits or traits in people. Rate your opinion by adding some intensifying words in front of your adjectives, such as:

- tidak terlalu not too ...
- sedikit a little ...
- sangat very ...

1 Rajin mencuci piring sesudah makan.
2 Batuk tanpa menutup mulut.
3 Meludah di mana-mana.
4 Tidak pernah mau mendengarkan orang lain.
5 Selalu tersenyum setiap kali anda bertemu dengannya.
6 Selalu bicara dengan suara keras.
7 Selalu bersedia menolong jika orang lain ada kesulitan.
8 Menyontek pekerjaan anda setiap kali ada tugas atau ujian.
9 Suka menjelekkan anda kepada teman lain.
10 Suka bercanda jika bertemu dengan anda.

LATIHAN 7

Write a simple caption in Indonesian for each of the following pictures using a meN-kan verb, then say whether that verb is a simple transitive, causative or benefactive.
Summary

- MeN-kan words are primarily transitive verbs.
- They can have causative or benefactive meaning.
- Sometimes the suffix -kan is optional.
- In very few cases, MeN-kan verbs mean the same as their corresponding ber- verbs.
- Verbs affixed with meN-kan have different meanings than those affixed with member-kan.
- Some meN-kan words are adjectives as well as verbs. A few meN-kan words are either adjectives or verbs, not both.
Words with the circumfix meN-i are transitive verbs. Like other forms of affixation, meN-i gives different meanings when attached to the base word. In this chapter we look at some of these meanings.

Unlike meN-kan words, which include transitive verbs and adjectives, meN-i words are only transitive verbs. There are no meN-i adjectives.

The main point to remember about meN-i verbs is that the object that directly follows the verb is conceptualised as a static location; that is, the object does not change location. Some examples later in this chapter will clarify this further.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>meN-i VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>air</td>
<td>water</td>
<td>mengairi</td>
<td>to water (rice field, not garden)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gambah</td>
<td>picture</td>
<td>menggambil</td>
<td>to draw a picture on something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gula</td>
<td>sugar</td>
<td>mengguli</td>
<td>to sweeten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kulit</td>
<td>skin</td>
<td>mengulis</td>
<td>to skin something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minyak</td>
<td>oil</td>
<td>meminyaki</td>
<td>to oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obat</td>
<td>medication</td>
<td>mengobati</td>
<td>to treat with medication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sisik</td>
<td>scale</td>
<td>menysiki</td>
<td>to scale (for example, fish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tandatangan</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>menandatangani</td>
<td>to sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warna</td>
<td>colour</td>
<td>mewarnai</td>
<td>to colour in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To act in the manner of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN-i VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baik</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>membaiki</td>
<td>to be good to someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bintang</td>
<td>star</td>
<td>membintangi</td>
<td>to star in a film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bohong</td>
<td>lie</td>
<td>membohongi</td>
<td>to deceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dalang</td>
<td>puppeteer</td>
<td>mendalangi</td>
<td>to mastermind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guru</td>
<td>teacher</td>
<td>menggurui</td>
<td>to patronise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jahat</td>
<td>bad, evil</td>
<td>menjahati</td>
<td>to treat someone badly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaura</td>
<td>champion</td>
<td>menjuarai</td>
<td>to win (games)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kasih</td>
<td>love, affection</td>
<td>mengasihi</td>
<td>to love, have affection for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ketua</td>
<td>chairperson</td>
<td>mengetuai</td>
<td>to chair, head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musuh</td>
<td>enemy</td>
<td>memusuhi</td>
<td>to treat as enemy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raja</td>
<td>king</td>
<td>merajai</td>
<td>to rule over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sponsor</td>
<td>sponsor</td>
<td>mensponsori</td>
<td>to sponsor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sutradara</td>
<td>film director</td>
<td>menyutradari</td>
<td>to direct (films)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wakil</td>
<td>representative</td>
<td>mewakili</td>
<td>to represent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To cause something to become what is indicated by the base word

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN-i VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>basah</td>
<td>wet</td>
<td>membasahi</td>
<td>to wet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kotor</td>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>mengotori</td>
<td>to dirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kurang</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>mengurangi</td>
<td>to reduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luka</td>
<td>wound</td>
<td>melukai</td>
<td>to hurt (physical or emotional)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Repeated action

Some men-i verbs indicate that the action is done repeatedly to one or more objects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN-i VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ambil</td>
<td>get, take</td>
<td>mengambil</td>
<td>to get or take things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bakar</td>
<td>burn</td>
<td>membakari</td>
<td>to burn land or things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cium</td>
<td>kiss</td>
<td>menciumi</td>
<td>to kiss repeatedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garuk</td>
<td>scratch</td>
<td>menggaruki</td>
<td>to scratch repeatedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gigit</td>
<td>bite</td>
<td>menggigiti</td>
<td>to bite repeatedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pukul</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>memukuli</td>
<td>to hit repeatedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tebang</td>
<td>fell (trees)</td>
<td>menebangi</td>
<td>to fell many trees</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some meN-i and meN-kan verbs with the same base word have different meanings depending on how the object (the primary object, if there are two objects in the sentence) is perceived or conceptualised. As mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, the object in sentences with meN-i verbs is conceptualised as a static location; it does not change location. In contrast, the object in sentences with meN-kan verbs changes location; it moves from one place to another.

Notice below that in 1a the object (saya) is stationary, while in 1b the object (radio itu) changes location from where Bu Ratih had it before to a location closer to the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Adverb of time</th>
<th>Prepositional phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>Bu Ratih</td>
<td>mendekati</td>
<td>saya</td>
<td>siang tadi.</td>
<td>ke meja saya.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>me</td>
<td>this afternoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Bu Ratih</td>
<td>mendekatkan</td>
<td>radio itu</td>
<td>ke meja saya.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the radio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>Ibu</td>
<td>mengantari</td>
<td>Bu Marni</td>
<td>kue.</td>
<td>untuk Bu Marni.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Beneficiary</td>
<td>a cake.</td>
<td>Prepositional phrase for Bu Marni.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bu Marni</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>stay where she is.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2b</td>
<td>Ibu</td>
<td>mengantarkan</td>
<td>kue</td>
<td></td>
<td>untuk Bu Marni.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Patient</td>
<td></td>
<td>Prepositional phrase for Bu Marni.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bu Marni</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>stay where she is.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3a</td>
<td>Ahmad</td>
<td>menyirami</td>
<td>kebunnya</td>
<td>setiap sore.</td>
<td>ke pohon itu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Adverb of frequency</td>
<td>Prepositional phrase on the tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>his garden</td>
<td>every afternoon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3b</td>
<td>Ahmad</td>
<td>menyiramkan</td>
<td>seember air</td>
<td>ke pohon itu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Object</td>
<td></td>
<td>Prepositional phrase on the tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a bucket of water</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>stay where it is.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LATIHAN 1

The following pairs of sentences contain meN-i and meN-kan verbs. Draw a simple picture to illustrate each sentence, showing whether the object remains stationary or changes location.

1 a Saya akan pergi sebentar; jangan menduduki kursi saya ya.
b Adik mendudukkan bonekanya di tempat tidur.
2 a Mereka mengantari saya bunga kemarin.
b Pak Harsoyo mengantarkannya ke dokter gigi.
3 a Dia mengidap anjing yang galak itu.
b Bapak menjaubkan pisau tajam itu dari jangkauan anaknya.
4 a Mereka berenang menyelam sungai itu.
b Petugas menyeberangkan anak-anak sekolah setiap pagi.
5 a Bu Rani menanami kebunnya dengan jagung.
b Bu Rani menanamkan biji jagung di kebunnya.
6 a Kakak menghadiahkan ibu topi wol untuk ulang tahunnya.
b Pak Dimas menghadiahkan sepeda kepada anaknya.
7 a Dokter mengobati pasien kanker itu.
b Mereka pergi mengobatkan anaknya ke dokter.
8 a Mereka menaburkan makam neneknya dengan bunga.
b Mereka menaburkan bunga di makam neneknya.

Undifferentiated meN-i and meN-kan

Sometimes Indonesian speakers do not differentiate between meN-i and meN-kan, which can be confusing for some learners. Fortunately, there are not too many cases where this occurs. Here are some examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEN-I VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MEN-KAN VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>memanasi</td>
<td>to heat (for example,</td>
<td>memanaskan</td>
<td>to heat (for example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>food, milk)</td>
<td></td>
<td>food, milk)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memberati</td>
<td>to trouble or cause</td>
<td>memberatkan</td>
<td>to trouble or cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>anxiety</td>
<td></td>
<td>anxiety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memikirik</td>
<td>to think about</td>
<td>memikirkan</td>
<td>to think about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menamai</td>
<td>to name</td>
<td>menamakan</td>
<td>to name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menginginkan</td>
<td>to want, desire</td>
<td>menginginkan</td>
<td>to want, desire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menykikita</td>
<td>to hurt (feelings)</td>
<td>menykikitan</td>
<td>to hurt (feelings)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LATIHAN 2

Translate the following sentences with meN–i and meN–kan into English.

1. Tadi malam polisi mendatangi rumah kami.
2. Produser film itu mendatangkan aktor dari luar negeri.
3. Ibu saya sedih memikirkan adik saya yang tidak mau sekolah.
4. Dillah memasukkan uang itu ke dompetnya.
5. Para demonstran melemparkan batu ke kantor itu dengan marah.
6. Pencuri mulai mengambil barang-barang di rumah itu.
7. Siapa yang akan mengantarkan kamu ke sekolah besok?
8. Jane menangisi anjingnya yang mati.
9. Siapa yang menduri tempat tidur itu tadi malam?

Other meN–i and meN–kan contrasts

Some other meN–i and meN–kan words share the same base word but no obvious contrast in meaning, unlike those we saw in section 13.2. The best way to remember them might just be to learn them by heart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>meN–i OR meN–kan VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>memperingati</td>
<td>to commemorate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memperingatkan</td>
<td>to warn, reprimand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mendahului</td>
<td>to overtake, to beat someone in something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mendahulukan</td>
<td>to put something or someone first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menyelamati</td>
<td>to congratulate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menyelamatkan</td>
<td>to save someone or something</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MeN–i and corresponding intransitive verbs

As discussed in Chapter 9, in some cases an intransitive verb can be transformed into a transitive verb by using meN– verbs suffixed either by -i or -kan. The meaning may be similar or it may change. Here are some examples with meN–i.
INTRANSITIVE VERB + PREPOSITION | ENGLISH MEANING | MEN-kan TRANSITIVE VERB | ENGLISH MEANING
--- | --- | --- | ---
berdiam di | to live in | mendiami | to occupy, inhabit
bertemu dengan | to meet with | menemui | to go and see someone
duduk di | to sit on | menduduki | to occupy a position or territory
hadir di | to be present at, attend | menghadiri | to attend
marah kepada | to be angry with | memarahi | to be angry with, scold
masuk ke | to go into, enter | memasuki | to go into, enter
menikah dengan | to get married to | menikahi | to wed
percaya kepada | to believe in | mempercayai | to believe in, trust
sadar akan | to be aware of, conscious of | menyadari | to realise
suka akan/dengan | to like, be fond of | menyukai | to like, favour
tahu tentang | to know about | mengetahui | to know something

LATIHAN 3

Translate the following sentences into Indonesian using either intransitive or transitive verbs with meN-i.

1. I don't believe in ghosts.
2. I realised that I was wrong.
3. They trusted me to buy the computer.
4. Ali went to see the headmistress.
5. He married a girl from Surabaya.
7. They know my weakness.
8. Twelve million people inhabit that territory.
9. Don't be angry with me.
10. They attended the protest last week.

LATIHAN 4

Look at the following pictures, then write a simple caption for each one in Indonesian using either meN-i or meN-kan verbs.
Summary

- Words with meN-i are transitive verbs.
- The object of meN-i verbs is conceptualised as a static location.
- The meN-i affixation gives different meanings to the base word.
- Contrast between MeN-i and meN-kan verbs:
  - Some are contrasted in meaning: the object in meN-i does not change location, while in meN-kan it does.
  - Some meN-i and meN-kan verbs are not differentiated in meaning, while some others are.
  - Some meN-i verbs have corresponding intransitive verbs. Some of them have similar meanings, while others are quite different.
Words prefixed by ter- fall into two main categories: adjectives and verbs. The adjectives are easier to remember because they have only one general meaning, while the verbs have several meanings.

### Adjective ter-

When ter- is affixed to adjectives, it indicates superlative, which in English is shown by the word 'most' (for example, 'most important', 'most expensive') or the ending '-est' (for example, 'smartest', 'easiest', 'coldest'). Ter- in this use can be substituted by the word paling, which means the same thing, as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TER-SUPERLATIVE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PALING SUPERLATIVE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>terbaik</td>
<td>best</td>
<td>paling baik</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terbaru</td>
<td>newest</td>
<td>paling baru</td>
<td>newest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tercanggih</td>
<td>most sophisticated/</td>
<td>paling canggih</td>
<td>most sophisticated/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>modern (for example,</td>
<td></td>
<td>modern (for example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of technology)</td>
<td></td>
<td>of technology)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tercantik</td>
<td>most beautiful</td>
<td>paling cantik</td>
<td>most beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tercepat</td>
<td>fastest, quickest</td>
<td>paling cepat</td>
<td>fastest, quickest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terkaya</td>
<td>richest</td>
<td>paling kaya</td>
<td>richest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>termahai</td>
<td>most expensive</td>
<td>paling mahai</td>
<td>most expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>termodern</td>
<td>most modern</td>
<td>paling modern</td>
<td>most modern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>termudah</td>
<td>easiest</td>
<td>paling mudah</td>
<td>easiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>termurah</td>
<td>cheapest</td>
<td>paling murah</td>
<td>cheapest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpandai</td>
<td>smartest, cleverest</td>
<td>paling pandai</td>
<td>smartest, cleverest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertinggi</td>
<td>tallest, highest</td>
<td>paling tinggi</td>
<td>tallest, highest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**LATIHAN 1**

Answer the following questions in Indonesian.

1. Siapa orang yang terkaya di dunia?
2 Binatang apa yang tercepat larinya?
3 Gunung apa yang tertinggi di dunia?
4 Toko apa yang termurah di koto anda?
5 Apa judul film yang terbaru bulan ini?

**Ter- verbs**

Verbs prefixed by *ter-* are either *stative verbs*, indicating no action, or *action verbs* (intransitive or transitive), indicating action. Action verbs describe either accidental action or ablative action.

**Stative verbs**

'Stative' means that the verbs do not suggest any action; they mainly indicate a state of affairs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>terbagi</td>
<td>divided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terbalik</td>
<td>upside down, inside out, back to front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terbuka</td>
<td>opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tercatat</td>
<td>noted, listed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terdaftar</td>
<td>registered, enrolled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terdapat</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tergantung</td>
<td>hung (for example, painting, lamp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terkenal</td>
<td>well-known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terletak</td>
<td>located</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpenuhi</td>
<td>fulfilled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpenuh</td>
<td>hidden, buried, in worst state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terputus</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tersirat</td>
<td>implied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertata</td>
<td>organised, neatly put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertempel</td>
<td>stuck (for example, poster on wall, sticker on book)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertera</td>
<td>listed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertulis</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertutup</td>
<td>shut, closed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LATIHAN 2**

Complete the following sentences with words from the above list.

2. Namanya sudah ____________________ di daftar kelas.
3. Poster besar itu ____________________ di dinding kamar saya.
4. Perabot rumahnya semua ____________________ rapi.
5. Biarkan jendela itu ____________________ karena hawa di ruangan ini panas sekali.
6. Aduh, kaki saya sakit sekali karena ____________________
Accidental action: intransitive
Ter- verbs can be either intransitive or transitive. The verbs in the following table are intransitive. This means that they take a subject but no object. When used as intransitive, ter- suggests the following meanings:
- The subject experiences some forced or involuntary motion.
- The subject displays spontaneous expressions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FORCED OR INVOLUNTARY MOTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TER- VERB</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terbentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terduduk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tergelincir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terguncang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terjatuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terjeremlab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terjerumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terlempar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpelanting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terperosok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tersandung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tersasar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPONTANEOUS EXPRESSIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TER- VERB</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terdiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terngangga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tersenyum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertawa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertegun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lina terjatuh dari tangga. Subject Verb Prepositional phrase
Lina fell off the stairs.

Anak itu tersenyum manis. Subject Verb Adverb
The child smiled sweetly.
LATIHAN 3

Work in pairs, taking turns to act out the following words while your partner tries to guess what the word is in Indonesian.
1. Terduduk
2. Tertawa
3. Tersandung
4. Terbentur
5. Tergangga
6. Tersenyum
7. Tergelincir
8. Terdiam

Accidental action: transitive
The following ter-verbs are used in the sentence preceded by an object, much like the object-focus (passive)—see Chapter 19. Ter- in this use suggests the following meanings.
- The object experiences something that it cannot control.
- The object experiences something done by mistake.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UNCONTROLLABLE EVENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TER- VERB</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terbangun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tergeser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terinjak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terkecoh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpunggok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpukul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertabrak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertangkap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertipu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOMETHING DONE BY MISTAKE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TER- VERB</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terbawa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>termakan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Saya terbangun oleh suara keras di luar.

Mobilnya tertabrak oleh truk di jalan tol.
You can also leave out the 'by phrase' if you wish. In conversation, people often do this. When the addressee wants to know further, he or she can ask for more specific information. For instance, we can just say:

**Mobilnya tertabrak.**
Her car was hit.

If our addressee wants to know who or what hit the car, he or she can ask:

**Oleh siapa?**
By whom?

or:

**Siapa yang menabrak?**
Who hit it?

**Abilitative**
‘Abilitative’ means ‘able to be (can be) what the base word indicates’. The verbs below can also be used as transitive in a manner similar to the object-focus (passive) discussed above.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>terbeli</td>
<td>can be afforded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terciium</td>
<td>can be smelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terdengar</td>
<td>audible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teringat</td>
<td>comes to mind (recalled)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terjangkau</td>
<td>can be reached</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terlihat</td>
<td>visible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpikir</td>
<td>comes to mind (thought about)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Baju mahal itu **tak** terbeli oleh saya.
Object     Negative Verb by Subject
I cannot afford that expensive shirt.

(Literally: That expensive shirt cannot be bought by me.)

As in the previous transitive example, you can also omit the 'by' phrase.

**Suaranya** **tidak** terdengar.
Object     Negative Verb
His voice cannot be heard (inaudible).

**LATIHAN 4**
Choose the correct answer for each of the following sentences.
1. Tidak ... oleh saya untuk membawa payung.
   a. terbawa
   b. terpikir
   c. terlihat

96 A Student’s Guide to Indonesian Grammar
2. Penjaga toko itu ... mencuri uang dari kas.
   a. teringat
   b. terpergok
   c. terkecoh

3. Baru ... olehnya bahwa hari ini adalah hari ulang tahun ibunya.
   a. tertangkap
   b. terpikir
   c. teringat

4. Karena bis penuh sesak, kaki saya ... oleh orang.
   a. telihat
   b. tergeser
   c. terinjak

5. Pembunuh berdarah dingin itu sampai sekarang belum ...
   a. tertabrak
   b. tertangkap
   c. tertipu

**Other uses**

There are ter- words that do not fit into the categories above.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TER- WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>terdiri (dari, atas)</td>
<td>to consist (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terhadap</td>
<td>towards (a person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terlalu</td>
<td>too (followed by an adjective), similar to ke-an with the 'excessiveness' meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terlambat</td>
<td>late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>termasuk</td>
<td>include</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpaksa</td>
<td>to be forced to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terserah</td>
<td>as you will, up to you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ter- and ke- or ke-an**

Ter- is often replaced by either ke- or ke-an, with no difference in meaning. The only difference is that ter- sounds more formal, whereas ke- and ke-an are less formal and are more often used in spoken Indonesian.

Ter- is replaceable by ke- or ke-an particularly in transitive verbs.
**Ter- = ke-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>KE- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>terbangun</td>
<td>to be woken by something</td>
<td>kebangun</td>
<td>to be woken by something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terbeli</td>
<td>can be bought, can be afforded</td>
<td>kebeli</td>
<td>can be bought, can be afforded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tercium</td>
<td>can be smelt</td>
<td>kecium</td>
<td>can be smelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tergeser</td>
<td>to be shifted or to be pushed aside</td>
<td>kegeser</td>
<td>to be shifted or to be pushed aside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terinjak</td>
<td>to be accidentally stepped on</td>
<td>keinjak</td>
<td>to be accidentally stepped on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terjangkau</td>
<td>can be reached, affordable</td>
<td>kejangkau</td>
<td>can be reached, affordable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpergok</td>
<td>caught red-handed</td>
<td>kepergok</td>
<td>caught red-handed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpikir</td>
<td>to come to mind</td>
<td>kepikir</td>
<td>to come to mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terpukul</td>
<td>to be accidentally hit by someone or to be psychologically affected by some event</td>
<td>kepukul</td>
<td>to be accidentally hit by someone or to be psychologically affected by some event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tersasar</td>
<td>to lose one's way</td>
<td>kesasar</td>
<td>to lose one's way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertabrak</td>
<td>to be accidentally hit by a vehicle</td>
<td>ketabrak</td>
<td>to be accidentally hit by a vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertangkap</td>
<td>to be caught, to be captured</td>
<td>ketangkap</td>
<td>to be caught, to be captured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertawa</td>
<td>to laugh</td>
<td>ketawa</td>
<td>to laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertipu</td>
<td>to be cheated, to be conned</td>
<td>ketipu</td>
<td>to be cheated, to be conned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ter- = ke-an**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>KE-AN VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>terdengar</td>
<td>audible</td>
<td>kedengaran</td>
<td>audible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terlihat</td>
<td>visible</td>
<td>kelihatan</td>
<td>visible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Did you know?**

To say that someone is a victim of gossip (believing gossip), you can use the expression *termakan gosip*, literally meaning ‘to be eaten by gossip’.

**Reduplicated ter-**

Ter- verbs in this group usually describe manner.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>terbahak-bahak</td>
<td>roaring (with laughter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tergesa-gesa</td>
<td>in a hurry (walking or running)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terkantuk-kantuk</td>
<td>to nod off (in sleepiness)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tersipu-sipu</td>
<td>shyly (of facial expression)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dia **terbahak-bahak** ketika mendengar cerita saya.
He/she roared with laughter when hearing my story.

Sometimes Indonesian speakers add another verb in front of these *ter-* verbs. However, the English translation remains the same.

Dia **tertawa terbahak-bahak** ketika mendengar cerita saya.
He/she roared with laughter when hearing my story.

**LATIHAN 5**

Create a short story in Indonesian using all of the ter- words in each of the following groups.

1. *Terbahak-bahak*
   - Terbentur
   - Tergelincir
   - Tergesa-gesa
   - Tersandung
   - Tertutup

2. *Terbangun*
   - Terjerembab
   - Terpergok
   - Tersenyum
   - Tersipu-sipu
   - Tertidur

**Summary**

**Uses of ter-**

- Adjective: superlative (meaning 'most')
- Verb:
  - Stative
  - Accidental action (intransitive): forced/involuntary motion, spontaneous expressions
  - Accidental action (transitive): uncontrollable event, something done by mistake
  - Abilitative (transitive)
- Other uses
  - *Ter* with a similar meaning to ke- or ke-an
  - Reduplicated ter- to describe manner
Ke-an

In grammatical terms, ke-an is called a *circumfix*; that is, a combination of a prefix (ke-) and a suffix (-an) to form a word. This chapter looks at the various uses of ke-an.

**Ke-an verbs**

Many ke-an verbs indicate that the subject experiences or suffers from something over which the subject has no control—similar to one of the meanings of ter-in Chapter 14. This meaning can be specified further, as follows.

**Suffer from climatic or bodily conditions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>KE–AN VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>banjir</td>
<td>flood</td>
<td>kebanjiran</td>
<td>to be caught in flood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>candu</td>
<td>drugs</td>
<td>kecanduan</td>
<td>to be addicted to something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dingin</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>kedinginan</td>
<td>to suffer from cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haus</td>
<td>thirsty</td>
<td>kehausan</td>
<td>to be thirsty, parched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hujan</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td>kehujanan</td>
<td>to be caught in the rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kering</td>
<td>dry</td>
<td>kekeringan</td>
<td>to suffer from drought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tapar</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>kelaparan</td>
<td>to be starved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panas</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>kepanasan</td>
<td>to suffer from heat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semut</td>
<td>ant</td>
<td>kesemutan</td>
<td>to get pins and needles (literally 'to be struck or overcome by ants')</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LATIHAN 1**

Complete each of the following sentences using one of the ke-an words from the above list.

1. Beberapa negara di Afrika sangat membutuhkan hujan. Sudah beberapa bulan ini mereka menderita ____________________.
2. Aduh, saya tidak bisa berdiri karena kaki saya ____________________.
3 Kasihan Ani, dia menggigil (‘shivering’)
4 Ibu menghidupkan AC di ruang tamu karena merasa
5 Karena hujan yang tidak berhenti selama berhari-hari, rumah saya

**Lack of control over emotions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>KE–AN VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>senang</td>
<td>glad</td>
<td>kesenangan</td>
<td>to be overcome by glee, overjoyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>susah</td>
<td>sad</td>
<td>kesusahan</td>
<td>to be overcome by hardship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takut</td>
<td>afraid</td>
<td>ketakutan</td>
<td>to be overcome by fear, scared</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lack of control over a situation or event**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>KE–AN VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bagi</td>
<td>to distribute</td>
<td>kebagian</td>
<td>to be given a share of something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>betul</td>
<td>correct</td>
<td>kebetulan</td>
<td>by chance, it so happens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copet</td>
<td>pickpocket</td>
<td>kecopetan</td>
<td>to have one’s pocket picked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curi</td>
<td>to steal</td>
<td>kecurian</td>
<td>to have something stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habis</td>
<td>finished</td>
<td>kehabisan</td>
<td>to run out of something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hilang</td>
<td>to disappear</td>
<td>kehilangan</td>
<td>to lose something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jatuh</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td>kejatuhan</td>
<td>to be hit by an object falling from above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maling</td>
<td>intruder</td>
<td>kemalingan</td>
<td>to have the house broken into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tahu</td>
<td>to know</td>
<td>ketahuan</td>
<td>to be caught red-handed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tidur</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>ketiduran</td>
<td>to fall asleep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LATIHAN 2**

Translate the following sentences into English.
1 Kebetulan saya bertemu dengannya di toko sepatu itu.
2 Kasihan Joni, rumahnya kemalingan tadi malam.
3 Mereka berhasil membawa lari uang Rp5 juta tanpa ketahuan pemilik rumah.
4 Kami kehabisan beras, jadi malam ini harus berbelanja.
5 Pencuri itu lari ketakutan setelah melihat polisi datang.

In some cases, ke–an words simply indicate that something can be what the base word indicates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>KE–AN WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lihat</td>
<td>to see</td>
<td>kelihatan</td>
<td>visible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In this case, the meaning of ke-an is similar to the abilitative meaning of the prefix ter- (see Chapter 14). Interestingly, kelihatan also extends to ‘look, it seems, it looks like’ when we add -nya at the end.

**Kelihatannya** dia sakit.
She looks sick.

Hari ini mendung. **Kelihatannya** akan hujan.
Today is cloudy. It looks like it’s going to rain.

**Kelihatannya** ekonomi Indonesia akan membaik.
It looks like the Indonesian economy will improve.

---

**Ke-an adjectives**

Ke-an words in this group generally indicate ‘excessiveness’ and translate into English as ‘too + adjective’ (for example, too small, too large). They also mean the same as ‘terlalu (too) + adjective’ in Indonesian (for example, *terlalu kecil, terlalu besar*). The difference between using ke-an and terlalu is that ke-an can sometimes sound more informal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>KE–AN ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>besar</td>
<td>large</td>
<td>kebesaran</td>
<td>too large, too big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capai</td>
<td>tired</td>
<td>kecapaian</td>
<td>too tired, exhausted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gemuk</td>
<td>fat</td>
<td>kegemukan</td>
<td>too fat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kecil</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>kekecilan</td>
<td>too small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kenyang</td>
<td>full</td>
<td>kekenyangan</td>
<td>too full (overeating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuras</td>
<td>thin</td>
<td>kekurusan</td>
<td>too thin (of body)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mahal</td>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>kemahalan</td>
<td>too expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murah</td>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>kemurahan</td>
<td>too cheap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panjang</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>kepanjangan</td>
<td>too long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pendek</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>kependekan</td>
<td>too short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rendah</td>
<td>low</td>
<td>kerendahan</td>
<td>too low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tebal</td>
<td>thick</td>
<td>ketebalan</td>
<td>too thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tinggi</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>ketinggian</td>
<td>too high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tipis</td>
<td>thin</td>
<td>ketipisan</td>
<td>too thin (not for body)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When ke–an is applied to base words indicating a particular part of the day, such as morning, afternoon or night, it means ‘something happens at an inappropriate time’. For example, coming home too late at night or ringing someone too early in the morning.
Handy expression

A useful word to know with the ‘excessiveness’ meaning is keterlaluan, which means ‘too much, too far, (of behaviour)’. It comes from terlalu (‘too’).

Dia memang keterlaluan. Sudah berkali-kali diingatkan jangan terlambat, tapi masih juga begitu. He/she has indeed gone too far. I’ve warned him/her repeatedly not to be late, but he/she still does it.

LATIHAN 3

Match these sentences with the following pictures.

1. Rok itu kebesaran.
2. Rok itu kemahalan; uang saya tidak cukup.
3. Anjing itu ketakutan.
Lihat betapa tajamnya pedang ini...
Ke—an also forms abstract nouns. By ‘abstract’ we mean things that we cannot touch, see or feel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>KE–AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bahagia</td>
<td>happy</td>
<td>kebahagiaan</td>
<td>happiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bersih</td>
<td>clean</td>
<td>kebersihan</td>
<td>cleanliness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cantik</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>kecantikan</td>
<td>beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cepat</td>
<td>fast</td>
<td>kecepatan</td>
<td>speed, velocity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duduk</td>
<td>to sit</td>
<td>kedudukan</td>
<td>position, rank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gembira</td>
<td>joyful</td>
<td>kegembiraan</td>
<td>joyfulness, excitement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giat</td>
<td>active</td>
<td>kegiatan</td>
<td>activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hidup</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>kehidupan</td>
<td>life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kacau</td>
<td>mixed up</td>
<td>kekacauan</td>
<td>havoc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuat</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>kekuatan</td>
<td>strength, power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lisan</td>
<td>oral</td>
<td>kelisanan</td>
<td>orality, oracy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maju</td>
<td>to go forward</td>
<td>kemajuan</td>
<td>progress, advancement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mati</td>
<td>to die</td>
<td>kematian</td>
<td>death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puas</td>
<td>satisfied</td>
<td>kepuasan</td>
<td>satisfaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satu</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>kesatuan</td>
<td>unity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sehat</td>
<td>healthy</td>
<td>kesehatan</td>
<td>health</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can also attach ke—an to words that already have a prefix, such as ber-. For example, the word berada (to be at a place) comes from the base word ada (there is/are, exist)and the prefix ber-. When we add ke—an, we get keberadaan, which means ‘existence’.

Below are more examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>KE–AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beraksara</td>
<td>literate</td>
<td>keberaksaraan</td>
<td>literacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bersama</td>
<td>together</td>
<td>kebersamaan</td>
<td>togetherness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Did you know?**

We can also form longer ke—an abstract nouns by adding the negative word tidak before the base word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TIDAK + BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>KE–AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tidak adil</td>
<td>not fair</td>
<td>ketidakadilan</td>
<td>injustice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidak mengerti</td>
<td>not understand</td>
<td>ketidakmengerti</td>
<td>incomprehension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidak pasti</td>
<td>not certain</td>
<td>ketidakpastian</td>
<td>uncertainty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tidak tahu</td>
<td>not know</td>
<td>ketidaktahu</td>
<td>ignorance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some ke-an words have two meanings. Depending on how we use them, they may indicate one thing or the other.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KE–AN WORD</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ABSTRACT NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kelaparan</td>
<td>struck by hunger</td>
<td>hunger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kepanjangan</td>
<td>too long</td>
<td>unabbreviated form (for example, of a name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kependekan</td>
<td>too short</td>
<td>abbreviated form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kerendahan</td>
<td>too low</td>
<td>lowness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ketinggian</td>
<td>too high</td>
<td>height</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KE–AN WORD</th>
<th>QUANTITY WORD</th>
<th>QUANTITY WORD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kebanyakan</td>
<td>too much, too many</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 4

Match each Indonesian sentence in the left column with its English equivalent in the right column.

1 Kasihan adikmu, dia kecapaian.  
2 Kegembirannya meluap-luap.  
3 Jangan makan terlalu banyak. nanti kamu kekenyangan.  
4 Mobil itu melaju dengan kecepatan 90 km per jam menuju Canberra.  
5 Kedudukan ibu saya di perusahaan itu adalah sebagai direktur.  
6 Kemarin saya kecopetan ketika di bis.  
7 Wah, saya malu sekali tadi pagi di kelas karena saya ketiduran ketika guru saya berbicara.  
8 Teman saya kelihatan sedih sekali hari ini.  
9 Barang siapa ketahuan menyontek dalam ujian ini akan mendapat nol.  
10 Maaf Bu, saya sedang kesulitan uang, jadi belum bisa membayar sewa rumah.  

a Don't overeat, or you will be bloated.  
b I feel sorry for your younger sibling; he/she is exhausted.  
c My mother's position in the company is director.  
d Literally: His joy is overflowing. (He is over the moon.)  
e The car moves at a speed of 90 kilometres per hour in the direction of Canberra.  
f My friend is looking very sad today.  
g I'm sorry, ma'am, I'm having a financial hardship, so I haven't been able to pay my (house) rent.  
h Whoever is found cheating in this exam will get zero.  
i I was so embarrassed this morning in class because I fell asleep while my teacher was talking.  
j Yesterday I had my pocket picked when I was on the bus.
Summary

Uses of ke-an:
- **Ke-an verbs:** Generally indicating lack of control; for example, over climatic or bodily condition, emotion or over an event or situation. When attached to base words indicating parts of the day, *ke-an* indicates that something happens at an inappropriate time.
- **Ke-an adjectives:** generally indicating excessiveness (in English: 'too ...')
- **Ke-an abstract nouns**
- Some *ke-an* words have dual meanings.
Words with the peN- prefix are usually either nouns or adjectives.

The capital letter N in peN- indicates the same sound changes that occur in meN-verbs. Indeed, many peN- words have corresponding meN- verbs.

The (N) is written in parentheses because in some cases there are no sound changes; for example, in words that may have corresponding ber-verbs.

### PeN- nouns

PeN- nouns are derived from various base words that are either verbs, nouns or adjectives.

**A person who does, or is associated with, what the base word indicates**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PEN- NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baca</td>
<td>to read</td>
<td>pembaca</td>
<td>reader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bantu</td>
<td>to help</td>
<td>pembantu</td>
<td>helper, servant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beli</td>
<td>to buy</td>
<td>pembeli</td>
<td>buyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>besar</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>pembesar</td>
<td>important government official</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bohong</td>
<td>to lie</td>
<td>pembohong</td>
<td>liar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bual</td>
<td>to boast, brag</td>
<td>pembual</td>
<td>bragger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>candu</td>
<td>illegal drugs</td>
<td>pecandu</td>
<td>drug addict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinta</td>
<td>love</td>
<td>pencinta</td>
<td>lover of something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curi</td>
<td>to steal</td>
<td>pencuri</td>
<td>thief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datang</td>
<td>to come</td>
<td>pendatang</td>
<td>migrant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dengar</td>
<td>to hear, listen</td>
<td>pendengar</td>
<td>listener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaga</td>
<td>to take care</td>
<td>penjaga</td>
<td>caretaker, keeper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jahat</td>
<td>evil, wicked</td>
<td>penjahat</td>
<td>criminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jajah</td>
<td>to colonise</td>
<td>penjajah</td>
<td>coloniser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jual</td>
<td>to sell</td>
<td>penjual</td>
<td>seller</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some words do not undergo sound changes. Often, these are words that have corresponding ber- verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PEN- NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mabuk</td>
<td>drunk</td>
<td>pemabuk</td>
<td>drunkard, alcoholic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makan</td>
<td>to eat</td>
<td>pemakan</td>
<td>eater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minum</td>
<td>to drink</td>
<td>pemimum</td>
<td>drinker (alcoholic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muda</td>
<td>young</td>
<td>pemuda</td>
<td>young man, youth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pungut</td>
<td>to pick up, collect</td>
<td>pemungut</td>
<td>collector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syair</td>
<td>poem</td>
<td>penyair</td>
<td>poet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulis</td>
<td>to write</td>
<td>penulis</td>
<td>writer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In some cases, the meaning of the pen- word is a metaphorical one. For example, the word penduduk does not mean 'person who sits', but rather 'person who occupies'; that is, 'inhabitant'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PEN- NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duduk</td>
<td>to sit</td>
<td>penduduk</td>
<td>inhabitant, population</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 1

Here are some pictures of people associated with certain activities or professions. Match each of the following pen- words with the corresponding picture.

1. Pelari
2. Pelukis
3. Pemain sepak bola
4. Pemancing ikan
5. Pendayung
Be careful!
Although peN- and per- often mean 'the person who does something associated with the base word', they cannot be applied to all cases. For instance, the Indonesian word for 'chef' is tukang masak, not pemasak. The word tukang means 'person skilled in a certain area, or labourer'. Some other examples are:

- tukang becak: rickshaw driver (not pebecak)
- tukang ledeng: plumber (not peledeng)
- tukang listrik: electrician (not pelistrik)

Here are some more words for which we can use tukang. Find out how to say them in Indonesian.

- welder
- photographer
- carpenter
- magican
- hitman

Something having the function associated with the base word

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PEN- NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buka</td>
<td>to open</td>
<td>pembuka</td>
<td>opener (for example, can opener)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dingin</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>pendingin</td>
<td>cooler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garis</td>
<td>line</td>
<td>penggaris</td>
<td>ruler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hapus</td>
<td>to erase</td>
<td>penghapus</td>
<td>eraser, duster (for blackboards)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ikat</td>
<td>to tie</td>
<td>pengikat</td>
<td>instrument for tying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panas</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>pemanas</td>
<td>heater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potong</td>
<td>to cut</td>
<td>pemotong</td>
<td>cutter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulukul</td>
<td>to hit</td>
<td>pemukul</td>
<td>instrument for hitting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some other similar words simply mean 'something associated with the base word'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PEN- NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sakit</td>
<td>sick</td>
<td>penyakit</td>
<td>sickness, illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sebab</td>
<td>to cause</td>
<td>penyebab</td>
<td>cause</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 2
The following are noun phrases containing peN- words. Find out what they mean in English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.
1 Hidangan pembuka
2 Pecandu musik techno
Some **PeN-** words are adjectives and they are derived from adjectival base words. The derived adjectives mean 'person having the characteristics described by the base word'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PEN- ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>diam</td>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>pendiam</td>
<td>quiet person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malas</td>
<td>lazy</td>
<td>pemalas</td>
<td>lazy person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malu</td>
<td>shy</td>
<td>pemalu</td>
<td>shy person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marah</td>
<td>angry</td>
<td>pemarah</td>
<td>person who is quick to anger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riang</td>
<td>cheerful</td>
<td>periang</td>
<td>cheerful person</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LATIHAN 3**

Work in pairs, taking turns to interview each other in Indonesian about the characteristics of five people you know well. You must use the adjectives in the above table in your description, preceded by the 'degree words' listed below. More than one adjective should be used for each description.

- sedikit (a little)
- tidak begitu (not so)
- sangat (very)
- paling (most)

Example:

Ayah saya: sedikit pemalu dan sangat pendiam.
My father: a little shy and very quiet.
LATIHAN 4

Give the peN- form of the following base words, then check the English meaning of each peN- word by consulting your dictionary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>PEN- FORM</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 salur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 bakar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 buru</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 didik</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 jilat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 samar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 culik</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 samun</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 selidik</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 teliti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Summary

- PeN- words are mostly nouns, but some are adjectives.
- They often have either corresponding meN- or ber verbs.
- PeN- nouns mean either ‘person’ or ‘thing’ associated with the base word.
- PeN- adjectives describe the characteristics of a person.
Like other affixes, the -an suffix has several functions, the main one being to form a noun. Its other functions are to form adjectives and adverbs.

### Forming a noun

Nouns with -an can be derived from verbs or adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>-AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bantu</td>
<td>to help</td>
<td>bantuan</td>
<td>help, assistance, aid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bundar</td>
<td>round</td>
<td>bundaran</td>
<td>roundabout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gantung</td>
<td>to hang</td>
<td>gantungan</td>
<td>hanger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karang</td>
<td>to compose an essay</td>
<td>karangan</td>
<td>essay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keluh</td>
<td>to complain, sigh</td>
<td>keluhan</td>
<td>complaint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kenal</td>
<td>to know a person</td>
<td>kenalan</td>
<td>acquaintance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kotor</td>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>kotoran</td>
<td>dirt, excrement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main</td>
<td>to play</td>
<td>mainan</td>
<td>toy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makan</td>
<td>to eat</td>
<td>makanan</td>
<td>food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masuk</td>
<td>to go in, enter</td>
<td>masukan</td>
<td>input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minum</td>
<td>to drink</td>
<td>minuman</td>
<td>drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parkir</td>
<td>to park</td>
<td>parkiran</td>
<td>parking lot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Modifying another noun

Words with the -an suffix can also be used in a noun phrase to modify another noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>NOUN PHRASE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beli</td>
<td>to buy</td>
<td>barang belian</td>
<td>purchased goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curi</td>
<td>to steal</td>
<td>barang curian</td>
<td>stolen goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinjam</td>
<td>to borrow</td>
<td>uang pinjam</td>
<td>borrowed money (debt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sewa</td>
<td>to rent, hire</td>
<td>rumah sewaan</td>
<td>rented house</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reduplicated nouns

TO INDICATE VARIETY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buah-buahan</td>
<td>variety of fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bunga-bungaan</td>
<td>variety of flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daun-daunan</td>
<td>variety of leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obat-obatan</td>
<td>medication (variety of medicine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sayur-sayuran</td>
<td>variety of vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tumbuh-tumbuhan</td>
<td>variety of plants, flora</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TO RESEMBLE WHAT IS INDICATED BY THE BASE WORD

In this group are words that can be nouns or verbs. The nouns usually refer to toy things, while the verbs refer to playing or pretending to do something.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kuda-kudaan</td>
<td>rocking-horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobil-mobilan</td>
<td>toy car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orang-orangan</td>
<td>toy person (for example, scarecrow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rumah-rumahan</td>
<td>toy house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(main) koboi-koboian</td>
<td>to play cowboys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masak-masakan</td>
<td>to pretend to cook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sembunyi-sembunyan</td>
<td>to play hide-and-seek</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 1

Below are some base words and their meaning in English. Form a noun from each by adding the suffix -an. Guess the meaning in English of each -an noun, then check your dictionary to see if your guess is correct.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>-AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 pukul</td>
<td>to hit</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pakai</td>
<td>to wear</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 tulis</td>
<td>to write</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 baca</td>
<td>to read</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 tonton</td>
<td>to watch</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 jual</td>
<td>to sell</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 peluk</td>
<td>to embrace</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 tanam</td>
<td>to plant, sow</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 cicil</td>
<td>to pay in instalments</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 tabrak</td>
<td>to collide</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LATIHAN 2

Translate these noun phrases into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1 Barang dagangan
2 Uang cicilan
3 Uang simpanan
4 Anak jalanan
5 Mobil sewaan
6 Baju pinjaman
7 Jam tangan curian
8 Warna celupan
9 Manajer bohongan
10 Pekerjaan borongan

LATIHAN 3

Translate these noun phrases into Indonesian.

1 Toy fish
2 Toy train
3 Toy calculator
4 Toy telephone
5 Toy computer

Forming an adjective

Adjectives with the suffix -an are derived from either another adjective or a noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>-AN ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kampung</td>
<td>village</td>
<td>kampungan</td>
<td>country bumpkin (negative connotation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murah</td>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>murahan</td>
<td>trashy, low quality</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-an with numbers

When -an is attached to some numbers, it means 'in the multiplication of'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>-AN WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ratus</td>
<td>hundred</td>
<td>ratusan</td>
<td>hundreds of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ribuan</td>
<td>thousand</td>
<td>ribuan</td>
<td>thousands of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juta</td>
<td>million</td>
<td>jutaan</td>
<td>millions of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miliar</td>
<td>billion</td>
<td>miliaran</td>
<td>billions of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When -an is attached to some fractional numbers, however, the meaning is quite different.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>-AN WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>seperempat</td>
<td>one-quarter</td>
<td>perempatan</td>
<td>intersection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepertiga</td>
<td>one-third</td>
<td>pertigaan</td>
<td>T-intersection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setengah</td>
<td>half</td>
<td>pertenganan</td>
<td>middle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Forming an adverb**

Adverbs with the suffix -an are usually reduplicated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>-AN ADVERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>besar</td>
<td>large</td>
<td>besar-besaran</td>
<td>on a large scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habis</td>
<td>all gone</td>
<td>habis-habisan</td>
<td>exhaustively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kecil</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>kecil-kecilan</td>
<td>on a small scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mati</td>
<td>to die, dead</td>
<td>mati-matian</td>
<td>with a lot of effort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terang</td>
<td>clear</td>
<td>terang-terangan</td>
<td>openly, frankly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>untung</td>
<td>lucky</td>
<td>untung-untungan</td>
<td>with luck</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LATIHAN 4**

Complete each of the following sentences with a word from the box. Each word may be used only once.

1 Dia berusaha __________________ untuk menang.
2 Joni dengan __________________ mencuri uang kas di toko itu.
3 Ulang tahun bapaknya yang ke-50 dirayakan __________________
4 Dia memaki temannya __________________ kemarin.
5 Bu Yati membuka usaha __________________ di pasar.
6 Keluarga Burhan akan berlibur ke Adelaide pada ________________ tahun.
7 Jangan membeli barang __________________, nanti cepat rusak.
8 Kemarin terjadi kecelakaan di __________________ jalan itu.
9 Membeli tattsloxto itu __________________; bisa menang, bisa tidak.
10 Lina tidak suka kepada Toni, karena Toni __________________.
Summary

- The majority of words with the -an suffix are nouns.
- Words with the -an suffix can also be verbs, adjectives or adverbs.
- Reduplicated -an words are either nouns or adverbs.
Words with peN-an and per-an are mostly abstract nouns (things we cannot touch, see or feel). Many of these nouns come from verbs and, as such, they carry some element of ‘action’ in their meaning. This is rather different from many ke-an words which are also abstract nouns, but in which no ‘action’ is implied.

However, not all peN-an and per-an words come from verbs. Some are noun-based, which makes them more like ke-an nouns.

Because of their abstract nature, peN-an and per-an words are abundant in areas of language use where abstract concepts are required, such as newspaper and magazine articles, books, academic writing and talks about economic, historical, political and other issues.

### PeN-an

Most peN-an words are derived from meN- verbs. This is why the sound changes in meN- verbs are also found in peN-an words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEN- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PEN-AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>memakai</td>
<td>to use</td>
<td>pemakaian</td>
<td>use, usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memandang</td>
<td>to gaze</td>
<td>pemandangan</td>
<td>scenery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membaca</td>
<td>to read</td>
<td>pembacaan</td>
<td>reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membangun</td>
<td>to build</td>
<td>pembangunan</td>
<td>development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membeli</td>
<td>to buy, purchase</td>
<td>pembelian</td>
<td>purchase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membuat</td>
<td>to make</td>
<td>pembuatan</td>
<td>the making of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meganam</td>
<td>to plant</td>
<td>penanaman</td>
<td>the planting of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mencium</td>
<td>to smell, kiss, sniff</td>
<td>penciuman</td>
<td>sense of smell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mendengar</td>
<td>to hear</td>
<td>pendengaran</td>
<td>sense of hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menginap</td>
<td>to stay the night</td>
<td>penginapan</td>
<td>inn, motel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mengirim</td>
<td>to send</td>
<td>pengirimman</td>
<td>the sending of, dispatch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menjual</td>
<td>to sell</td>
<td>penjualan</td>
<td>the selling of, sale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mengulis</td>
<td>to write</td>
<td>penulisari</td>
<td>the writing of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menyeberrang</td>
<td>to cross (for example, street)</td>
<td>penyeberrangan</td>
<td>crossing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MeN-kan and meN-i
Some peN-an nouns also come from meN-kan or meN-i words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEN-I OR MEN-KAN VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PEN-AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>membicarakan</td>
<td>to talk about</td>
<td>pembicaraan</td>
<td>talk, discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menduduki</td>
<td>to occupy</td>
<td>pendudukan</td>
<td>occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menemukan</td>
<td>to find</td>
<td>penemuan</td>
<td>finding, discovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menjeremahkan</td>
<td>to translate</td>
<td>penerjemahan</td>
<td>the translating of, translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mengetahui</td>
<td>to know</td>
<td>pengetahuan</td>
<td>knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menggunakan</td>
<td>to use</td>
<td>penggunaan</td>
<td>use, usage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Per-an
Many per-an nouns come from ber- verbs and, therefore, like their peN-an counterparts, most of them have an element of 'action' in their meaning. There are no sound changes involved with per-an nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BER- VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PER-AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>berbeda</td>
<td>to differ</td>
<td>perbedaan</td>
<td>difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berbuat</td>
<td>to do, commit</td>
<td>perbuat</td>
<td>act, behaviour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berdagang</td>
<td>to trade, do business</td>
<td>perdagangan</td>
<td>trade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berjalan</td>
<td>to walk</td>
<td>perjalanan</td>
<td>trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bertanding</td>
<td>to compete</td>
<td>pertandingan</td>
<td>competition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bertani</td>
<td>to farm</td>
<td>pertanian</td>
<td>farming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bertemu</td>
<td>to meet</td>
<td>pertemuan</td>
<td>meeting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The consonant 'r' in the prefix ber- disappears when attached to the base word kerja. The per-an noun derived from this verb follows the same pattern, thus pekerjaan, not perkerjaan.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BER- + KERJA</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PER-AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bekerja</td>
<td>to work</td>
<td>pekerjaan</td>
<td>work, job</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In some cases, words having the same base word can be transformed into either meN-(kan/i) or ber- verbs, and from these verbs we can get either peN-an or per-an abstract nouns. Each affixation results in a different meaning.
LATIHAN 1
Each of the following incomplete sentences contains a meN-, meN–kan, meN–i or ber- verb. Complete each sentence using a peN–an or per–an abstract noun.

1. Tempat orang menginap namanya ____________________.
2. Para menteri akan bertemu sore ini. ____________________
3. Petenis dari Amerika itu akan bertanding melawan petenis Australia. ____________________ itu adalah bagian dari Australian Open.
4. Louis Pasteur adalah orang yang pertama kali menemukan obat anti anthrax dan rabies. ____________________nya sangat berguna bagi umat manusia.
5. Para petani akan menanam padi jenis baru tahun ini. ____________________nya akan dimulai pada awal musim hujan nanti.
Other per-an nouns

Some other per-an nouns are rather irregular in the sense that they are not systematically derived from ber- verbs. The following are either from meN-(kan/i) verbs or from base words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>MEN-(KAN/I) VERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PER-AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bintang</td>
<td>star</td>
<td>perbintangan</td>
<td>astrology,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>astronomy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coba</td>
<td>mencoba</td>
<td>to try</td>
<td>percobaan</td>
<td>experiment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>film</td>
<td>memfilm</td>
<td>to film</td>
<td>perfilm</td>
<td>film industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kota</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>perkotaan</td>
<td>city areas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nikah</td>
<td>menikah</td>
<td>to get married</td>
<td>pernikahan</td>
<td>wedding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinta</td>
<td>meminta</td>
<td>to request</td>
<td>permintaan</td>
<td>request, demand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pustaka</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>perpustakaan</td>
<td>library</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tolong</td>
<td>menolong</td>
<td>to help</td>
<td>pertolongan</td>
<td>help, assistance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pe-an

Some other abstract nouns are prefixed by pe- rather than peN- or per-, unlike the ones we previously encountered. These nouns have irregular bases: some are from base words; some are from meN-kan; some are from ber-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE WORD</th>
<th>MEN-KAN OR BER- WORD</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>PE-AN NOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gunung</td>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>pegunungan</td>
<td>mountainous/hilly areas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desa</td>
<td>village</td>
<td>pedesaan</td>
<td>village/country areas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gadai</td>
<td>menggadaikan</td>
<td>pegadaian</td>
<td>pawnshop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kubur</td>
<td>menguburkan</td>
<td>pekuburan</td>
<td>graveyard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mukim</td>
<td>bermukim</td>
<td>pemukiman</td>
<td>settlement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 2

The following table contains some Indonesian verbs with their English meaning. Write the abstract noun form of each verb and guess its English meaning. Check your answers in the dictionary. The first one is done for you.
LATIHAN 3
Listed below on the left are some noun phrases pertaining to beauty and skin care found in various Indonesian magazines. Match them with their English counterparts on the right.

1. Penataan rambut  
   - Premature aging
2. Perawatian kecantikan  
   - Beauty care
3. Penuaan dini  
   - Hair styling
4. Peremajaan kulit  
   - Body slimming
5. Pelangsingan tubuh  
   - Skin rejuvenation

LATIHAN 4
Below are some common phrases in English. Do you know how to say them in Indonesian? Use the peN-an or per-an prefix for the English words ending with ‘-ing’. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1. Bread making
2. Language teaching
3. Candle making
4. Poetry reading
5. House buying
6. Book publishing
7. Dictionary making
8. Book binding
9. Letter writing
10. Fund raising (in Indonesian, literally ‘fund collecting’)

Summary
- Most peN-an and per-an words are abstract nouns; some are concrete nouns.
- Most are derived from verbs and, as such, they contain an element of ‘action’ in their meaning. Some are from nouns, much like ke-an nouns.
- Many peN-an nouns come from meN-, meN-kan or meN-i verbs.
- Many per-an nouns are from ber- verbs. Some others are either from meN-verbs or from base words.
- Pe-an nouns are from either meN- or ber- verbs or from base words.
Subject-focus and Object-focus

The terms subject-focus and object-focus are so called because in these sentence constructions our attention is focused on the subject or the object of the sentence. You will find that they are also called active voice and passive voice in other grammar books.

A subject is, generally speaking, a doer, actor or agent of an action.

An object is, on the other hand, someone or something that is affected by the action performed by the subject.

For example, if my dog ate a cake that I have just baked, the cake is the object (it is 'affected' by the action of eating) and the dog is the subject (that does the eating).

In effect, then, the subject-focus and the object-focus constructions are really about what it is in the sentence that becomes our focus of attention. Whatever gets the focus, comes first in the sentence. If the focus is on the subject, the subject comes first in the sentence; if the focus is on the object, the object comes first.

Subject-focus

The subject-focus construction can be identified by the following.
1. The subject comes before the verb and the object.
2. The subject is followed by a meN-, meN-kan or meN-i transitive verb.
3. There may be an auxiliary verb before the meN- verb (see below).
4. The object follows the verb directly, with nothing preceding it (for example, a preposition).

In short, a simple subject-focus sentence consists of:

**SUBJECT – TRANSITIVE VERB – OBJECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nina</th>
<th>menulis</th>
<th>cerpen.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nina</td>
<td>is writing</td>
<td>a short story.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The doctor is examining a patient.

To make our sentences a little more interesting, we can insert a few extra things, such as auxiliary verbs, adverbs and prepositional phrases (see earlier chapters for prepositional phrases).

**Auxiliary verbs**

Auxiliary verbs are words that are complementary to the main verb. In the sentence, they appear before the main verb. Auxiliaries express such things as **aspect** and **modality.** Aspect indicates whether an action is in the process, completed or not completed, or will be completed. Modality expresses such things as uncertainty, possibility or necessity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ASPECT</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
<th>MODALITY</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sedang</td>
<td>in process of</td>
<td>barangkali</td>
<td>maybe, probably, possibly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belum</td>
<td>not yet</td>
<td>bisa</td>
<td>can, be able to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sudah</td>
<td>already</td>
<td>boleh</td>
<td>may</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>akan</td>
<td>will, be going to</td>
<td>dapat</td>
<td>can, be able to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>harus</td>
<td>must, have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ingin</td>
<td>want, wish to, will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mau</td>
<td>want, wish to, will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mungkin</td>
<td>maybe, probably, possibly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adverbs**

Adverbs are words that indicate such things as **frequency, manner** and **time.** They can be inserted either at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATION</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
<th>ENGLISH MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>lima kali seminggu</td>
<td>five times a week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manner</td>
<td>pelan-pelan</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>pagi ini</td>
<td>this morning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let us now see how we can incorporate auxiliary verbs, adverbs and prepositional phrases into our subject-focus construction.

**Nina akan menulis cerpen besok.**

**Dokter sedang memeriksa pasien di ruang 3.**

You can also insert two auxiliary verbs before the main verb, one indicating aspect and the other indicating modality.

**Nina barangkali akan menulis cerpen besok.**

**Nina akan barangkali menulis cerpen besok.**
Now that you have learnt about the subject-focus construction, try to write your own sentences by copying and completing the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>AUXILIARY</th>
<th>MAIN VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>ADVERB OR PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Object-focus**

As mentioned, in an object-focus sentence our attention is focused on the object of the sentence. This is often difficult for English speakers, because in English we tend to focus on the subject. An additional difficulty in learning this construction comes from the fact that many object-focus sentences in Indonesian do not have exact equivalents in English. Many such sentences would have to be translated into subject-focus in English to be acceptable.

The object-focus construction is important to learn, simply because it is so prevalent in spoken and written Indonesian. The steps given below are to guide you in forming object-focus sentences.

**Step 1**
Identify whether the *subject* is the first, second or third person.

**FIRST PERSON (SPEAKER OR PEOPLE REPRESENTED BY THE SPEAKER)**
- Singular: Pronouns: saya, aku, -ku
- Plural: Pronouns: kami, kita

**SECOND PERSON (PERSON SPOKEN TO: THE ADDRESSEE)**
- Singular: Pronouns: kamu, engkau, kau, anda
  - Address terms: for example, Bapak, Ibu, Saudara
- Plural: Pronouns: kalian, anda sekalian, Saudara sekalian
THIRD PERSON (PERSON OR THING SPOKEN ABOUT)

Singular:
- Pronouns: dia, -nya
- Proper names: for example, Tommy, Mira, Pak Hamid
- Other noun phrases: for example, kucing itu, murid itu

Plural:
- Pronoun: mereka
- Proper names: for example, Tommy dan Mira
- Other noun phrases: for example, kucing-kucing itu, murid-murid itu

Step 2
If the subject is the first or second person, the order is:

OBJEKT - SUBJECT - VERB (no prefix, but retain suffix if there)

If the subject is the third person, there are two variations.

VARIATION A
If the subject is either a pronoun (for example, dia, mereka) or a proper name (for example, Bu Rani, guru-guru itu, para sopir bis), the order is:

OBJEKT - VERB (with di-prefix and suffix, if there) - (OLEH) SUBJECT

Note:
The word oleh (by) is optional. When it is followed by the pronoun dia, this pronoun is shortened into -nya.

oleh dia → olenya

When speaking informally, people often prefer the word sama.

Baju saya dicuci sama dia.

My shirt was washed by him.

→ He washed my shirt.

VARIATION B
If the subject is a pronoun, you can follow the same order as for first and second persons. We cannot do this if the subject is a proper name (for example, Pak Hamid) or a noun phrase (for example, kucing itu).
Summary of the rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>RULE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| First or second person | Object - Subject - Verb  
(no prefix on verb; suffix retained) |
| Third person (pronoun or proper name) | Object - Verb - (oleh) Subject  
(prefix di- on verb; suffix retained) |
| Third person (pronoun only) | Object - Subject - Verb  
(no prefix on verb; suffix retained) |

Transforming subject-focus into object-focus

Now we will see how the rules for subject-focus and object-focus sentences can be applied to sentences.

First or second person subject

**SUBJECT-FOCUS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB (TRANSITIVE MEN-)</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saya</td>
<td>membuat</td>
<td>kue coklat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kami</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kita</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anda</td>
<td>membuat</td>
<td>kue coklat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saudara</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Eng)kau</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OBJECT-FOCUS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB (NO PREFIX)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kue coklat</td>
<td>saya</td>
<td>buat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kami</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kita</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kue coklat</td>
<td>Anda</td>
<td>buat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kamu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Saudara</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Eng)kau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Third person subject

SUBJECT-FOCUS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB (TRANSITIVE MEN-)</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dia</td>
<td>membuat</td>
<td>kue coklat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mereka</td>
<td>membuat</td>
<td>kue coklat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pak Burhan</td>
<td>membuat</td>
<td>kue coklat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bu Made</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guru-guru itu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OBJECT-FOCUS

Variation A: Subject is either pronoun or proper name

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>VERB (DI- PREFIX)</th>
<th>(OLEH) SUBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kue coklat</td>
<td>dibuat</td>
<td>olehnya, -nya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kue coklat</td>
<td>dibuat</td>
<td>(oleh) mereka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(oleh) Pak Burhan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(oleh) Bu Made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(oleh) guru-guru itu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Variation B: Subject is pronoun only

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB (NO PREFIX)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kue coklat</td>
<td>dia</td>
<td>buat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kue coklat</td>
<td>mereka</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 2

The following are simple subject-focus sentences with either first, second or third person subject. Transform them into object-focus sentences as shown above.

First person subject

1. Dia bercucuran air.
2. Dia merencanakan pernikahan.
3. Dia mengajarkan pekerjaan.
4. Dia memasak makanan.

Second person subject

1. Anda mengantri untuk mencari pekerjaan.
2. Anda membeli kue coklat.
3. Anda membaca koran.
4. Anda belajar untuk kuis.

Third person subject

1. Dia mencari pekerjaan.
3. Anak-anak mengemukakan usulan.
5. Anak-anak memeriahkan kuis.

Subject-focus and Object-focus 129
Object-focus with auxiliary, prepositional phrase and adverb

We saw earlier that simple subject-focus constructions consisting of Subject – Verb – Object can be made more interesting by adding auxiliary verbs, prepositional phrases and adverbs. These constructions can be transformed into object-focus constructions. The simplest way to do this is by following the above rules, while leaving these additional things where they are. That is to say, we do not need to move them around or make any other changes the way we do with the subject, verb and object.

SUBJECT-FOCUS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject: Nina</th>
<th>Auxiliary verb: akan</th>
<th>Main verb: menulis</th>
<th>Object: cerpen</th>
<th>Adverb: besok</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

OBJECT-FOCUS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object: cerpen</th>
<th>Auxiliary verb: akan</th>
<th>Main verb: ditulis</th>
<th>Subject: Nina</th>
<th>Adverb: besok</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

SUBJECT-FOCUS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject: Dokter</th>
<th>Auxiliary verb: sedang</th>
<th>Main verb: memeriksa</th>
<th>Object: pasien</th>
<th>Prepositional phrase: di ruang 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

OBJECT-FOCUS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object: pasien</th>
<th>Auxiliary verb: sedang</th>
<th>Main verb: diperiksa</th>
<th>Subject: dokter</th>
<th>Prepositional phrase: di ruang 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

LATIHAN 3

Transform the sentences below into object-focus constructions. Remember to keep the auxiliary verb, prepositional phrase and the adverb where they are in each sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Auxiliary verb</th>
<th>Main verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Prepositional phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Istrinya sedang mengantar anak merdeka ke dokter.</td>
<td>Istrinya</td>
<td>sedang</td>
<td>mengantar</td>
<td>anak merdeka</td>
<td>ke dokter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Anda boleh menonton program TV besok.</td>
<td>Anda</td>
<td>boleh</td>
<td>menonton</td>
<td>program TV</td>
<td>besok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Bu Tirta akan menjual bunga di pasar.</td>
<td>Bu Tirta</td>
<td>akan</td>
<td>menjual</td>
<td>bunga</td>
<td>di pasar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Saya tinggal menahami permasalahan di kebun saya.</td>
<td>Saya</td>
<td>tinggal</td>
<td>menahami</td>
<td>permasalahan</td>
<td>di kebun saya</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 4

Write an object-focus sentence, using the auxiliary akan, to describe what is happening or what will or may happen to each of the objects shown below. Remember that you must use a transitive verb for this. Start your sentences with the words provided.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Auxiliary verb</th>
<th>Main verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Prepositional phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7. Istrinya sedang mengantar anak merdeka ke dokter.</td>
<td>Istrinya</td>
<td>sedang</td>
<td>mengantar</td>
<td>anak merdeka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Anda boleh menonton program TV besok.</td>
<td>Anda</td>
<td>boleh</td>
<td>menonton</td>
<td>program TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Bu Tirta akan menjual bunga di pasar.</td>
<td>Bu Tirta</td>
<td>akan</td>
<td>menjual</td>
<td>bunga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Saya tinggal menahami permasalahan di kebun saya.</td>
<td>Saya</td>
<td>tinggal</td>
<td>menahami</td>
<td>permasalahan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example:

Bunga ini ...
Bunga ini akan saya beli.

Literally: This flower I will buy → I will buy this flower.

1 Kotak emas itu ...
2 Siswa dari Indonesia itu ...
3 Telefon genggam ini ...
4 Tugas itu ...
5 Tiket pesawat terbang ini ...

Questions in object-focus using apa yang and siapa yang

The object-focus construction can also be used in interrogative sentences. Rather than asking a question in subject-focus, we can use an object-focus construction starting with Apa yang ...? (What is it that ...) if the object is inanimate, or Siapa yang ...? (Who is it that ...) if the object is a person. In the following examples, the object is underlined.

FIRST PERSON SUBJECT

| Statement: Saya memasak nasi. |
| Question in subject-focus: Saya memasak apa? |
| Question in object-focus: Apa yang saya masak? |

SECOND PERSON SUBJECT

| Statement: Saudara akan membeli mobil. |
| Question in subject-focus: Saudara akan membeli apa? |
| Question in object-focus: Apa yang akan Saudara beli? |

THIRD PERSON SUBJECT

| Statement: Mereka menelepon teman saya. |
| Question in subject-focus: Mereka menelepon siapa? |
| Question in object-focus: Siapa yang mereka telepon? |
| Siapa yang ditelepon (oleh) mereka? |

LATIHAN 5

Turn the following statements into object-focus questions by using either Apa yang ...? or Siapa yang ...? The object in each sentence is underlined.

1 Kami makan nasi setiap hari.
2 Bu Siti membawa keranjang.
3 Mereka membuat majalah dinding sekolah.
4 Saya akan menelepon Toni.
5 Anda akan menerima hadiah besar.
6 Pak Totok menjual buah-buahan di pasar.
7 Rita dan Dani memanggil tukang becak itu.
8 Saya suka menonton film horor.
9 Guru menyuruh murid-murid pulang.
10 Anak-anak mencuri mangga di kebun Bu Rini.

Object-focus with unmentioned subject
Many object-focus sentences appear without the subject. This is because the subject is either known, assumed, non-specific (for example, someone, something) or not so important as to warrant a mention.

Mobil saya dicuri.
Object Verb
My car was stolen.

In this example, we know that someone stole the car, but the person is not identified. What is important in this sentence is the fact that the car was stolen, not so much who stole it.

Object-focus with no subject usually takes the di-form (third person, Variation A) and is often found in news reports and advertisements. Here are some real examples from Indonesian newspapers.

News headlines:
500 orang dikabarkan tewas dalam gempa bumi itu.
500 people are reported dead in that earthquake.

Penjahat mati didor di angkutan umum
Criminal shot dead in public transport

Classified advertisements:
Rumah dijual
Literally: House to be sold → House for sale

Mobil dijual
Literally: Car to be sold → Car for sale

LATIHAN 6
Below are some titles of classified advertisements and some news headlines from Indonesian newspapers. Find out what they mean in English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

Classified advertisements:
1 Rumah dikontrakkan
2 Tanah dijual
3 Toko disewakan
4 Mobil dicari

News headlines:
5 Penculik anak divonis 18 bulan
6 31 Truk kayu ilegal ditangkap
7 Anak perwira digebuki
LATIHAN 7

Here are descriptions of two Indonesian spices—pala (nutmeg) and kemiri (candle nuts)—containing object-focus sentences, from the recipe book *Masakan Indonesia*. Both of these spices are used widely in Indonesian cooking. Translate the descriptions into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

**Pala dan Bunga Pala**


**Kemiri**

LATIHAN 8

Look at each of the following two sets of pictures. Picture B shows that some things have been done to the objects in Picture A. Work in pairs to ask and answer questions in Indonesian about the pictures before and after the changes. Use the di-object-focus construction for the answers.

Example:
A: Bagaimana roti ini?
   How's this bread?
B: Belum diiris.
   Not yet sliced.
   or
Sudah diiris.
   Already sliced.

1 Picture A

Picture B
Summary

- Subject-focus and object-focus are about what it is in the sentence that becomes the focus of our attention.
- Simple subject-focus consists of: Subject - Transitive verb - Object.
- We can add auxiliary verbs, prepositional phrases and adverbs to the sentence to make it more interesting.
- To transform subject-focus into object-focus, determine first whether the subject is first, second or third person, then follow the rules:
  - First person: Object - Subject - Verb
  - Second person: Object - Subject - Verb
  - Third person: Object - di- Verb - (oleh) Subject
    - Object - Subject - Verb (if subject is pronoun)
- Remember that it is only the third person that gets the di- form.
- Many object-focus sentences do not have a subject. This is because the subject is known by context, assumed, non-specific or not very important.
Uses of -nya

In this chapter we will learn about -nya in examples like these:

Anjingnya bernama Jack.
Bagusnya!
Airnya panas!

The suffix -nya appears very often in spoken and written Indonesian. To make sense, -nya has to be attached to another word, which can be a noun, an adjective or a verb.

To show possession

When attached to a noun or noun phrase, -nya can indicate something that belongs to a third person (which, in spite of its name, can include things that are not people).

The suffix -nya is equivalent to the English 'his', 'her/hers' or 'its'; for example, 'her dog', 'his house', 'its tail'.

In this function, -nya replaces the pronoun dia, proper name referring to the third person or any noun phrase indicating a person, as shown in the following examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ini buku dia</th>
<th>→</th>
<th>Ini buku nya.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Itu kantor Bu Tini</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>Itu kantornya.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ini kamar anak saya</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>Ini kamar nya.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As equivalent of 'the'

The suffix -nya can also function as a definite article; that is, it can be used to refer to something already known or understood from context. In English, this is shown by the word 'the'.

Hawanya panas sekali hari ini.
The weather is very hot today.

Jangan lupa mengembalikan buku nya ya.
Don't forget to return the book, will you?
Ayo, bersihkan mobilnya.
Come on, clean the car.

Silakan makan kue nya!
Please eat the cake!

---

**Exclamation**

We can also attach -nya to an adjective to make an exclamatory remark about something. In a sentence, this exclamation usually comes before the noun or noun phrase that we exclaim about. For example, if we want to say how beautiful a flower is, then the word ‘beautiful’ comes first and ‘flower’ follows.

- **Cantiknya**: bunga ini!
  - Adjective + nya: Noun phrase
  - How beautiful: this flower is!

- **Sulitnya**: ujian itu!
  - Adjective + nya: Noun phrase
  - How difficult: the exam was!

- **Nakalnya**: anak ini!
  - Adjective + nya: Noun phrase
  - How naughty: this child is!

We can, of course, use an exclamation to pay someone a compliment or to express surprise, exasperation, a sense of wonder and so on. Often people do not bother to mention the noun phrase because what they are exclaiming about is understood from context.

- **Enaknya!**: How delicious! (for example, referring to food)

- **Dinginnya!**: So cold! (for example, referring to the weather)

We can also add another exclamatory word, such as **aduh**, **wah** or **ampun**, in front of the adjective to give the exclamation more force.

- **Aduh, pelitnya!**: My goodness, how scungy!

- **Wah, baunya!**: Literally: Wow, the smell! (for example, referring to fragrant or bad smell)
  → Wow, the smells nice! or Oh, that stinks!

- **Ampun, nakalnya!**: My goodness, so naughty! (for example, referring to a child’s behaviour)

---

**LATIHAN 1**

Make up an exclamatory expression using -nya for each of the following situations. Add an exclamatory word in front of your adjective to reinforce it. You can mention the noun phrase after the adjective, if you wish. The adjectives are underlined to help you.
1. It is sweltering today. What might you say to your friend?

2. You see images of starving children on television and are struck by how thin the children are. What might you say?

3. You want to buy a handbag, but when you start looking in shops, you find that handbags are more expensive than you had expected. What might you say?

4. You go to your friend's dinner party, which you thought would be attended by a few people. When you arrive, you find that there are many more people than you had anticipated. What would you say?

5. When you are strolling down the street near your house one evening, you see a very tall tree that you never noticed before. You are struck by how tall the tree is. What would you say?

Here are some common exclamatory expressions in Indonesian. Give their equivalents in English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

6. Aduh, lucunya boneka itu!

7. Wah, tebalnya buku ini!

8. Ampun, kerasnya musik itu!

9. Ampun, dinginnya hari ini!

10. Aduh, canggihnya teknologi baru itu!

### To be polite

In many instances, Indonesian speakers avoid saying 'you' or 'your' to the person to whom they are speaking, out of politeness. Instead, -nya is often preferred, which may seem strange to English speakers, since it sounds like they are referring to something belonging to someone else. For instance, a very common way of asking 'What is your name?' is Siapa namanya?, which literally means 'What is name?'. Likewise, to ask how old someone is, -nya is commonly used: Berapa umurnya?

- **Boleh saya pinjam bukunya?**
  - Literally: May I borrow the book?
  - → May I borrow your book?

- **Mobilnya bagus sekali!**
  - Literally: The car is very beautiful!
  - → Your car is very beautiful!

- **Sepatunya dibeli di mana?**
  - Literally: The shoes, where were they bought?
  - → Where did you buy your shoes?

### LATIHAN 2

The following are things that people often say or ask in English. Translate them into Indonesian, using -nya to be polite. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.
1. I really like your house.
2. Where is your car?
3. When is your exam?
4. What is your mother's name?
5. How old is your dog?
6. What is your occupation?
7. Your drawing is beautiful.
8. Your watch is slow.
9. What is your problem?
10. Where did you buy your shoes?

LATIHAN 3

Interview three of your friends in Indonesian, asking the following questions with -nya. Record their responses in a table as shown.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KOSAKATA</th>
<th>PERTANYAAN</th>
<th>TEMAN 1</th>
<th>TEMAN 2</th>
<th>TEMAN 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hari ulang tahun</td>
<td>Bu Rita</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k抽象</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edata</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**In topic-comment sentences**

*Topic-comment* sentences are those in which the subject is the *topic* of the sentence (what the sentence is about) and it comes first, while what follows is the *comment* about that topic. In speech, there is usually a short pause between the topic and the comment. This is not so evident in writing.

**Bu Rita anaknya lima.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bu Rita</td>
<td>anaknya lima.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Literally: (As for) Bu Rita, her children are five.

→ Bu Rita has five children.

The suffix -nya is attached to the noun or noun phrase that belongs to the topic. In the example above, the children belong to Bu Rita; therefore, -nya is attached to anak.

**Sekolah kami perpustakaannya besar.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sekolah kami</td>
<td>perpustakaannya besar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Literally: (As for) our school, its library is big.

→ Our school has a big library.
Teman saya jaketnya merah.

Topic Comment
Literally: (As for) my friend, his/her jacket is red.
My friend is wearing a red jacket.

LATIHAN 4

Match each of the topics in the left column with the comment in the right column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 CD saya</td>
<td>a baunya harum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Piring dan mangkuk ibu saya</td>
<td>b rodanya tiga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Roti dari toko itu</td>
<td>c jumlahnya banyak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Universitas itu</td>
<td>d penduduknya banyak sekali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Program televisi itu</td>
<td>e mahasiswa banyak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Bapak taman saya</td>
<td>f namanya ‘Sesame Street’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Indonesia</td>
<td>g warnanya putih</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Becak</td>
<td>h namanya James</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Bunga itu</td>
<td>i mobilnya Mazda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Penyiar radio itu</td>
<td>j rasanya enak</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 5

Write a topic-comment sentence in Indonesian on each of the following topics. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1 Their computer
2 My teacher's table
3 Her hat
4 That tree
5 That giraffe

To form abstract nouns

When attached to a verb or adjective -nya turns the word into an abstract noun. This is why in this function -nya is called a nominaliser. The process of forming the abstract noun is called nominalisation. In the following example, the verb ditutup (to be closed, shut down) in sentence a is turned into the noun ditutupnya (the closure of) in sentence b.

a Bank itu ditutup oleh pemerintah bulan lalu.
That bank was shut down by the government last month.

b Ditutupnya bank itu menyebabkan kemarahan banyak orang.
The closure of that bank caused anger in a lot of people.

Here are more examples of nominalisation of verbs.

a Pembunuhan itu cerdik kemarin sore.
That murder happened yesterday afternoon.
b  Terjadinya pembunuhan itu membuat polisi sibuk.
The taking place of (occurrence) of that murder made the police busy.

a  Bapak saya pergi ke Mekah untuk naik haji.
My father went to Mecca for a pilgrimage.

b  Perginya bapak saya ke Mekah adalah untuk naik haji.
The departure of my father to Mecca is for a pilgrimage.

Here are some examples of nominalisation of adjectives.

a  Penghasilan mereka besar.
Their income is high (literally 'large').

b  Besarnya penghasilan mereka memungkinkan mereka untuk membeli rumah mahal.
The high level (literally 'the largeness') of their income enabled them to buy an expensive house.

LATIHAN 6

Turn the underlined verbs and adjectives in each of the following sentences into abstract nouns by writing a new sentence with similar information, using the nominalised word at the beginning of your sentence.

Example:

Swalayan itu dibuka 24 jam.
The supermarket is open twenty-four hours.

Dibukanya swalayan itu 24 jam membuat orang senang berbelanja di sana.
The opening of the supermarket for twenty-four hours makes people enjoy shopping there.

1 Sekolah itu dibuka oleh Menteri Pendidikan.
Dibukanya ...

2 Banyak orang hadir di pertemuan itu.
Hadirnya ...

3 Ribuan orang terbunuh dalam insiden berdarah itu.
Terbunuhnya ...

4 Target penjualan bulan ini sudah tercapai.
Tercapainya ...

5 Ruangan itu sangat besar.
Besarnya ...

Summary

The suffix -nya has several uses:
- To show possession ('his', 'her/hers' or 'its')
- In topic-comment sentences, attached to the word in the comment part
- As a definite article, like 'the' in English
- As an exclamatory marker: 'How ...!' 'What a/an ...!' 
- As a nominaliser: to form an abstract noun from a verb or adjective
- To be polite by avoiding saying 'you' or 'your'
Ways to Say ‘Because’

In this chapter we look at five ways to say ‘because’ in Indonesian.

- (oleh) karena
- (oleh) sebab
- gara-gara
- mentang-mentang
- lanarun

You may wonder why there are so many words to express the same thing. The answer is, although all of those words mean ‘because’, they differ in terms of:

- where they can occur in a sentence
- where they come from
- their degree of formality

Remember that English also has different words, such as ‘because’, ‘for’ and ‘since’.

He failed the test because he studied the wrong chapters.

They didn’t do it for fear of hurting her.

I didn’t include you since you didn’t say anything.

Let us now look at the Indonesian words in turn.

(Oleh) karena

Karena is neutral in terms of formality, so it is suitable for any situation. However, sometimes people add oleh in front of it. When they do that, the expression sounds a little more formal.

Karena can be placed either at the beginning or middle of a sentence.

Adik saya tidak mau makan karena mulutnya sakit.

My younger brother/sister doesn’t want to eat because his/her mouth is sore.

Karena gaji mereka tidak dinaikkan, para pekerja pabrik itu marah.

Because their wage was not increased, the workers of that factory were angry.

To say ‘because of that’, simply add itu after karena.
Tahun lalu terjadi gempa bumi di sana, (oleh) karena itu banyak orang tewas.
Last year there was an earthquake there because of that many people died.

(Oleh) sebab

Sebab is also neutral in terms of formality and is often preceded by oleh (which is written in parentheses below to show that it is optional). The use of oleh makes the expression a little more formal.

Sebab cannot appear at the beginning of a sentence.

Saya membawa payung sebab kelihatannya akan hujan.
I'm carrying an umbrella because it looks like (it) will rain.

Toko-toko mulai memberikan diskon sebab hari Natal sudah dekat.
Shops begin to give discounts because Christmas is coming.

We can also add itu in the same way we do with karena.

Bayi itu lahir prematur; (oleh) sebab itu dia harus tinggal di rumah sakit selama tiga bulan pertama.
The baby was born premature because of that he/she had to stay at the hospital for the first three months.

Gara-gara

This word comes from the Javanese word goro-goro. Gara-gara means 'because' in the sense of 'as a result of'.

Gara-gara can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

Gara-gara kamu, saya dimarahi bapak.
Literally: As a result of your doing, I was scolded by father.
→ Because of you, I was scolded by father.

Hutan itu terbakar gara-gara orang seenaknya membuang puntung rokok.
The forest was burnt down as a result of someone carelessly throwing away cigarette butts.

Mentang-mentang

This reduplicated word means 'just because'. However, unlike its translation in English, mentang-mentang has a negative connotation. It should be placed at the beginning of a sentence.

Mentang-mentang kaya, dia sombong.
Just because (he/she) is wealthy, he/she is arrogant.
Tahun lalu terjadi gempa bumi di sana, (oleh) karena itu banyak orang tewas.
Last year there was an earthquake there; because of that many people died.

(Oleh) sebab

Sebab is also neutral in terms of formality and is often preceded by oleh (which is written in parentheses below to show that it is optional). The use of oleh makes the expression a little more formal.

Sebab cannot appear at the beginning of a sentence.

Saya membawa payung sebab kelihatannya akan hujan.
I’m carrying an umbrella because it looks like (it) will rain.

Toko-toko mulai memberikan diskon sebab hari Natal sudah dekat.
Shops begin to give discounts because Christmas is coming.

We can also add itu in the same way we do with karena.

Bayi itu lahir prematur; (oleh) sebab itu dia harus tinggal di rumah sakit selama tiga bulan pertama.
The baby was born premature; because of that he/she had to stay at the hospital for the first three months.

Gara-gara

This word comes from the Javanese word goro-goro. Gara-gara means ‘because’ in the sense of ‘as a result of’.

Gara-gara can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

Gara-gara kamu, saya dimarahi bapak.
Literally: As a result of your doing, I was scolded by father.
→ Because of you, I was scolded by father.

Hutan itu terbakar gara-gara orang seenaknya membuang puntung rokok.
The forest was burnt down as a result of someone carelessly throwing away cigarette butts.

Mentang-mentang

This reduplicated word means ‘just because’. However, unlike its translation in English, mentang-mentang has a negative connotation. It should be placed at the beginning of a sentence.

Mentang-mentang kaya, dia sombong.
Just because (he/she) is wealthy, he/she is arrogant.
Mentang-mentang merasa pintar, mahasiswa itu tidak mau belajar. **Just because** (he/she) feels (he/she is) smart, that university student does not want to study.

**Lantaran**

This word is informal and is therefore inappropriate for use in formal situations; for example, with your teacher in class. You may wish to use it with your friends instead.

**Lantaran** can be placed either at the beginning or middle of a sentence.

**Lantaran banyak PR (kerjaan rumah), saya tidak bisa ke bioskop.**

Because (I have) a lot of homework, I can't go to the movies.

**Piring dan mangkuk pecah semua lantaran dia ceroboh.**

Plates and bowls broke because he/she was careless.

---

**LATIHAN 1**

Complete the sentences below with the 'because' words above. Bear in mind whether the word can occur at the beginning or middle of a sentence (or both).

1 Pak Sabirin terkena kanker paru-paru ____________ merokok terlalu banyak.
2 ____________ bisnisnya bangkrut, pemilik toko itu tidak bisa membayar hutangnya.
3 Pencuri itu pingsan ____________ dipukuli oleh orang sekampung.
4 Ekonomi Indonesia memburuk ____________ situasi politik yang tidak stabil.
5 Bu Khatijah menangis sedih ____________ rumahnya kebanjiran.
6 ____________ sudah punya pacar, sekarang teman saya tidak pernah menelepon lagi.
7 ____________ ngebut, dia ditangkap polisi.
8 Tanaman itu subur ____________ sering diberi pupuk kandang.
9 Anak itu menderita ruam-ruam pada punggungnya ____________ cuaca yang sangat panas.
10 Budi muntah-muntah ____________ keracunan makanan.

---

**LATIHAN 2**

Write sentences using the appropriate 'because' words for the following situations. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1 You are late to class because you got up late this morning. What do you say to your teacher?
2 You could not come to your friend’s party because you had to work. What do you say to your friend?
3 Your father asks you why you have not washed your clothes. Say that you are simply lazy.
4 Your friend rings to ask why you did not turn up to play tennis yesterday. Apologise and tell her that you had to take your younger sister to the dentist.
5 You go to the supermarket to buy groceries. At the checkout you realise that you forgot to bring your wallet. What do you say to the checkout person?

Translate the following sentences into Indonesian using the 'because' words discussed in this chapter. To help you, the Indonesian equivalents of the underlined words are given in parentheses.
6 I was annoyed with him because he lost my calculator.
   (menghilangkan)
7 Mira missed the plane because her taxi came late. (ketinggalan)
8 Because of you, our Maths teacher was angry with me. (marah)
9 Because of the prolonged conflict in that region, many people died. (berkepanjangan)
10 Just because you have money, you cannot treat other people like that. (memperlakukan)

LATIHAN 3

Work in pairs. Prepare five questions related to what you know about your partner’s likes and dislikes or about what he or she wears or uses. Start your questions with mengapa (why)—or kenapa, if you want to be informal. Take turns interviewing each other.

Example:
Mengapa kamu suka apel?
Why do you like apples?
Karena menyehatkan dan rasanya enak.
Because (they are) healthy and taste good.

Summary

Ways of saying 'because':
- (Oleh) karena: neutral and can be used for any situation; can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence
- (Oleh) sebab: neutral; cannot be placed at the beginning of the sentence
- Gara-gara: from Javanese goro-goro; means ‘as a result of’; can occur either at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence
- Lantaran: for informal use; can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence
Ways to Say 'If'

There are various ways to say 'if' in Indonesian, each differing in terms of formality and the likelihood of the event happening. These are called conditionals.

In this chapter we look at five common ways to say 'if'.

- Kalau
- Jika
- (apa)bila
- seumpama(nya)
- seandanya

Kalau
Kalau is the common and most neutral way of saying 'if'. That is, it is neither too formal nor informal, so we can use it for any situation. It can be placed at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

Kalau hujan, kita tidak akan pergi.
If it rains, we will not go.

Saya tidak mau ikut kalau kamu tidak menjemput saya.
I won't come along if you don't pick me up.

Jangan parkir mobil di situ kalau tidak mau didenda.
Don't park your car there if (you) don't want to be fined.

Jika and (apa)bila
Jika and (apa)bila are more formal or poetic than kalau. They mean the same thing, but you probably would not want to use them with friends. These words are more appropriate in writing, songs or public announcements. As with kalau, we can place jika and (apa)bila at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence. Apabila is often shortened into bila, which is why apa is shown in parentheses.
Jika ada rejeki, kami ingin mengunjungi Singapura.
If we had some good fortune, we would like to visit Singapore.

Kami akan naik haji tahun depan apa(bila) tidak ada aral melintang.
We will go on a pilgrimage to Mecca next year if everything goes well (literally: 'if there are no obstacles').

Jangan membuka email itu jika tidak mau komputer anda terserang virus.
Don't open that e-mail if (you) don't want your computer to be affected by the virus.

LATIHAN 1
Complete the following sentences. Each sentence contains kalau, jika or (apa)bila. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1. Jika cuaca baik, ...
2. Kalau mobil anda mogok, ...
3. Bila gigi anda sakit, ...
4. Jika tidak makan pagi, ...
5. Kalau saya punya uang, ...
6. Kalau lulus ujian, ...
7. Jika anda berbicara keras-keras, ...
8. Jika tidak boleh menonton televisi, ...
9. Apabila tidak boleh pergi, ...
10. Kalau kamu lapar, ...

Seumpama(nya)
Seumpama(nya) is used to say 'if' when we know that the likelihood of the event happening is not great. Like kalau, jika and (apa)bila, seumpama can be placed at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence. The suffix -nya is optional.

Seumpama dia datang, tolong beritahu saya.
If she comes, please let me know.
(I don't think she will come, but if she does, please tell me.)

Kamu akan bilang apa seumpama dia marah?
What will you say if he gets angry?
(I don't think he will get angry, but if he does, what will you say?)

Note
Sometimes people add two 'if' words together for emphasis, Seumpama combines well with kalau, since both are neutral in terms of formality.

Kalau seumpama(nya) ...

Seandainya
Seandainya is similar to seumpama, but it is more formal and is usually used when we want to say that there is little likelihood of the event happening. Seandainya can be placed at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.
Seandainya saya milyuner, saya akan membeli kapal pesiar yang mewah.

If I were a millionaire, I would buy a luxury yacht.

Kami akan berpesta besar seandainya kami menang lotre.

We would have a big party if we won the lottery.

**Notes**

As with seumpama(nya), people often add seandainya with jika or (apa)bila. These words are compatible, since both are rather formal.

**LATIHAN 2**

The following are the lyrics of a popular song written by Indonesian songwriter and singer Melly Goeslaw. The song contains two of the 'if' words: jika and seumpama. Translate the song into English. Some of the vocabulary is given below; however, you may need your teacher’s help in interpreting the song.

*Jika*

*Melly Goeslaw and Ari Lasso*

Jika teringat tentang dikau
Jauh di mata dekat di hati
Sempat terpikir 'tuk kembali
Walau beda akan kujalani
Tak ada niat untuk selamanya pergi.

Jika teringat tentang dikau
Jauh di mata dekat di hati
Apakah sama yang kurasa
Ingin jumna walau ada segan
Tak ada niat untuk berpisah denganmu.

Jika memang masih bisa mulutku berbicara
Santun kata yang ingin terucap
‘Kan kudengar caci dan puji dirimu padaku
Kita masih muda dalam mencari keputusan
Maafkan daku ingin kembali
Seumpama ada jalan ‘tuk kembali.

**If ... then ...**

- kalau ... maka
- jika ... maka
- (apa)bila ... maka
- seumpama(nya) ... maka
- seandainya ... maka
To say 'if ..., then ...', we simply add maka after the 'if' word.

Kalau/rika/(apa)bi/a kamu seperti itu, maka saya tidak mau pergi
denganmu.
If you’re like that, then I don’t want to go with you.

Seumpama(nya)/seandainya hal itu terjadi, maka kami akan segera
bertindak.
If that happened, then we would immediately take action.

Handy expression
To say 'if so' or 'if that’s the case', we can say kalau bengitu or, if we
want to sound formal, jika/(apa)bila demikian.

Kalau bengitu, saya pulang sekarang.
If so, I’m going home now.

Jika/(apa)bila demikian, kami pulang sekarang.
If that’s the case, we’re going home now.

To say 'if you don’t mind':

Kalau (kamu/anda/bapak/ibu) tidak keberatan.

kalau saja ...
ifa saja ...
(apabila saja ...
seumpama(nya) saja ...
seandainya saja ...

To say 'if only', we add saja to kalau, jika, seumpama(nya) and
seandainya.

Kalau saja kamu datang sore itu!
If only you came that afternoon!

Jika/(apa)bila saja polisi cepat menangkap pencuri itu!
If only the police quickly captured that thief!

Seumpama(nya) saja dia tidak menabrak pohon itu.
If only he/she didn’t hit that tree!

Seandainya saja gempa bumi itu tidak terjadi!
If only that earthquake didn’t happen!

Ways to Say 'If' 149
To say 'What if ...?', we add bagaimana in front of the four 'if' words.

Bagaimana kalau hujan?
What if it rains?

Bagaimana jika/(apa)bila kami kalah?
What if we lose?

Bagaimana seumpama kamu dapat hadiah tiket ke Bali pulang-pergi?
What if you get a gift of a return ticket to Bali?

Bagaimana seandainya kamu melihat kantu itu?
What if you see that ghost?

LATIHAN 3

Say the following sentences in Indonesian. Choose the appropriate 'if' word for the situation and the person to whom you are talking.

1. Ask your friend: 'What if you're that teacher?'
2. Ask your teacher: 'Will we play basketball if it rains?'
3. Say to a stranger: 'What if I give you a million dollars?'
4. Heading for a magazine article: 'What if the world is not round?'
5. Say this to the class: 'What if we die tomorrow?'

Translate the following sentences into Indonesian. The Indonesian equivalents of the underlined words are given in parentheses.

6. If only they could lend us some money, we would not be this miserable. (sengsara)
7. What if she doesn't love you any more?
8. What if you could travel overseas tomorrow? (pergi ke luar negeri)
9. What if they don't want you to go with them?
10. If only I got a scholarship, I could study in Indonesia. (beasiswa)

Summary

- Five ways of saying 'if':
  - Kalau: neutral; can be used in any situation
  - Jika/(apa)bila: more formal or poetic; appropriate for writing or public announcements
  - Seumpama(nya): neutral; less likelihood of event happening
  - Seandainya: formal; less likelihood of event happening
- If ... then: 'if' word + maka
- If only: 'if' word + saja
- What if ...?: bagaimana + 'if' word
This chapter looks at ways of saying 'when' and 'while' in Indonesian. These words are used to connect one part of a sentence to another. In grammatical terms, these are called conjunctions and in Indonesian we can use the following words:

- ketika
- waktu
- sementara
- sambil
- sedangkan

Ketika and waktu both mean 'when', but ketika is a little more formal than waktu. These words are used to point to something that either happened in the past or will happen.

Waktu/ketika saya kecil keluarga saya tinggal di Surabaya. When I was little (a child) my family lived in Surabaya.

Kami sedang tidur waktu/ketika polisi datang ke rumah. We were sleeping when the police came to our house.

Ruth akan menelepon waktu/ketika sampai di Brisbane. Ruth will ring when she arrives in Brisbane.

Be careful!
To use 'when' as a question word (see Chapter 1), use kapan.

Kapan kamu pulang?
When are you going home?

Never use kapan as a conjunction, even though in English it also translates as 'when'. We cannot say, for instance:

- Saya tinggal di Surabaya kapan saya kecil.
  I lived in Surabaya when I was little (a child).
Sementara

Sementara means ‘while’ in the sense of ‘someone does something, while someone else does something else’ or ‘something happens while something else also happens’.

Kakak perempuan saya memasak sementara ibu pergi berbelanja.
My older sister cooked while my mother went shopping.

Pada bulan Desember di Eropa turun salju, sementara di Australia cuaca panas.
In December, in Europe it snows, while in Australia it is hot.

Tuti tertawa sementara ketiga temannya menangis.

Sambil

In contrast to sementara, which is used either for different people doing different things at the same time or for different things happening at the same time, sambil is used to refer to the same person(s) or animal(s) doing two things at the same time. It can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

Rio makan sambil menonton televisi.
Rio is eating while watching television.

Sambil meringkik kuda itu berlari.
While neighing the horse ran.
**Handy expression**
To say 'to kill two birds with one stone' (to do two things simultaneously) in Indonesian, we would say *sambil menyelam minum air*, which literally means 'while swimming underwater, drink the water'. This expression can also be used to mean 'to take advantage of something else at the same time of doing something'.

**Sedangkan**

*Sedangkan* means 'while' or 'whereas, where in fact'. We can use it to contrast two things, such as people, likes and dislikes or qualities.

- **Jalan Mawar lebar and bagus, sedangkan jalan Kenanga sempit dan kotor.**
  Mawar Street is wide and neat, *while* Kenanga Street is narrow and dirty.

- **Adik saya suka bersepeda, sedangkan kakak saya gemar bersepeda motor.**
  My younger sibling likes cycling, *while* my older one loves riding a motorbike.

**LATIHAN 1**
Join the two parts of each sentence using an appropriate 'when' or 'while' word. There may be more than one possible answer for each sentence. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1. Kulit pisang warnanya kuning ___________________ kulit buah kiwi warnanya coklat.
2. Ani berbicara ___________________ menangis.
4. Lily berasal dari Cina ___________________ Felix dari Nigeria
5. Anak kecil itu mandi ___________________ bernyanyi.
6. Saya sedang mendengarkan walkman ___________________ ibu saya pulang dari kantor.
8. Gaji pegawai tidak naik ___________________ harga bahan pangan terus meningkat.
10. Kami ke sekolah ___________________ ibu pergi bekerja.

**LATIHAN 2**
Look at the following picture of a busy street. Describe what people are doing using *sambil*, *sementara* or *sedangkan*. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.
Example:

*Nenek ini sedang berjalan, sedangkan anak kecil itu bermain di kolam.*

This grandmother is walking, while the small child is playing in the pond.

**Summary**

Ways of saying 'when' and 'while':
- **Ketika** and **waktu**; for something which takes place in the past or future
- **Sementara**; for when two different persons are doing different things at the same time, or when two different things happen at the same time
- **Sambil**; for when someone does two things at the same time
- **Sedangkan**; for contrasting two things
Although and Not ... But

In this chapter we will learn how to say:

- 'although', 'even though', 'even if', 'although it is so', 'in spite of'
- 'not ... but', 'not only ... but also', 'rather than ... in fact', 'not only ... on the contrary'

Although, even though

To say ‘although’ and ‘even though’ in Indonesian, we can choose between the following words.

- meski(pun)
- walaupun
- biar(pun)

The ending pun in those three words is shown in parentheses because people often omit it when they speak or write. The omission of pun can also make the words sound more poetic, which is why people tend to omit it when writing songs or poetry.

We can place these words either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

**Meski(pun)** hujan, Rani datang juga ke rumah saya.
Even though it rained, Rani still came to my house.

**Dia tetap saja tidak mau belajar walaupun** tahu ujian sudah dekat.
He/she still doesn’t want to study although (he/she) knows the exam is near.

**Biar(pun)** sudah dua kali dipenjara, orang itu masih merampok juga.
Even though twice jailed, that person still robs.

Even if

Meski(pun), walaupun and biar(pun) can also mean ‘even if’, depending on what we intend to say.

**Meski(pun)** hujan, kita masih bisa pergi.
Even if it rains, we can still go.
Tanaman itu akan tetap tumbuh walau(pun) tidak disiram. That plant will still grow even if you don’t water it.

Mereka tetap akan membuang sampah di situ biar(pun) lubang itu ditutup. They will still throw rubbish there even if the hole is covered.

Although it is so, in spite of

- meski(pun) begitu
- meski(pun) demikian
- walau(pun) begitu
- walau(pun) demikian
- biar(pun) begitu
- biar(pun) demikian

Meski(pun), walau(pun) and biar(pun) are often combined with either begitu or demikian to mean ‘in spite of that’ or ‘although/even though it is so’. Demikian is more formal, so it is not suitable to use when talking to close friends.

Meski(pun) begitu/demikian, saya tetap baik kepadanya. In spite of that, I still treat him/her well.

Walau(pun) begitu/demikian, kami tetap percaya kepada mereka. In spite of that, we still trust them.

Biar(pun) begitu/demikian, mereka masih saja tidak bisa menerima saran kami. In spite of that, they still cannot accept our suggestion.

Note

One of the meanings of begitu and demikian is ‘so’. However, because neither of these words can stand alone, we cannot use them to say, for example, ‘He didn’t come, so I went home’. Begitu and demikian only mean ‘so’ in the sense of ‘even though/although it is so’ (as in the above examples) or ‘it is so ... that ...’ (‘to the extent that’).

Film itu begitu/demikian panjangnya sehingga saya jadi bosan. The film was so long that I got bored.

LATIHAN 1

Translate the following sentences with meski(pun), walau(pun) and biar(pun) into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1 Meskipun harga tiket pesawat terbang mahal, kami pergi juga ke Bali.
2 Walaupun demikian, dia tidak mau minta tolong pada saya.
3 Biarpun acara televisi jelek, saya menonton juga.
4 Meski cuaca dingin, Joni tidak memakai jaket.
5 Walau guru marah, murid-murid tidak berhenti bercakap-cakap.
6 Biar sering disiram, pohon itu tidak cepat tumbuh.
7 Biarpun dibayar 10 juta rupiah, saya tidak mau membantu orang seperti dia.
8 Guru itu baik walaupun tidak banyak tersenyum.
9 Jeremy pergi ke pertandingan sepak bola itu meskipun harga karcisnya mahal.
10 Dia terus mengirim email kepada saya meskipun saya tidak pernah membalasnya.

Not ... but

- bukan ... tetapi
- bukan ... namun
- bukan ... melainkan

There are different ways of saying 'not ... but ...' in Indonesian. The first three expressions in the box above differ in terms of formality. Bukan ... tetapi is the most neutral, so we can use it for any situation, spoken or written. Bukan ... namun and bukan ... melainkan mean the same thing, but are more formal. They are therefore more suitable for use in formal speech (for example, with someone older or unfamiliar to you) or in writing. The difference between these expressions is similar to the difference between 'but' and 'however' in English.

Bukan ini, tetapi itu.
Not this, but that.

Bukan kami enggan, namun kami memang benar-benar tidak bisa membantu.
It's not that we're reluctant, but we in fact really couldn't help.

Bukan kesehatan bapak saya yang merisaukan, melainkan kesehatan ibu.
It's not my father's health that is worrying, but my mother's.

Not only ... but also

- bukan saja ... tetapi juga
- bukan saja ... namun juga

To say 'not only ... but also', we simply add saja after bukan, and juga after tetapi or namun.

Bukan saja dia malas, tetapi juga sering berbohong.
Not only is he/she lazy, but (he/she) also often lies.

Bukan saja dia pandai, namun juga baik hati.
Not only is he/she smart, but (he/she) is also good-hearted.
LATIHAN 2

Say the following in Indonesian, using the expressions that you have learnt.
Choose between tetapi, namun and melainkan for 'but' and specify to whom you are talking or on what occasion.
1. The party is not at my house, but in their house.
2. The exam is not only long, but also very difficult.
3. The merchandise in that shop is not only expensive, but also of low quality.
4. This city is not only large, but also beautiful.
5. We are not only happy you came, but also grateful.

Rather than ... in fact

- bukannya ... malahan ...

Another expression related to the ones above is bukannya ... malahan ... (rather than ... in fact ...). The table below shows how we can structure our sentence when using this expression.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BUKANNYA</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>MALAHAN</th>
<th>VERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bukannya</td>
<td>diam</td>
<td>tangisnya</td>
<td>malahan</td>
<td>menjadi-jadi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rather than</td>
<td>stopping (being quiet)</td>
<td>his/her cry</td>
<td>in fact</td>
<td>became worse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bukannya</td>
<td>membantu</td>
<td>dia</td>
<td>malahan</td>
<td>berdiri saja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rather than</td>
<td>helping</td>
<td>he/she</td>
<td>in fact</td>
<td>menonton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>just stood there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>watching.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not ... on the contrary

- bukannya ... tetapi malahan ...

We can also add tetapi or namun before malahan to mean 'not ... on the contrary' or 'instead of ... he/she just ...'. To use it in a sentence, we can put the words in the following order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>BUKANNYA</th>
<th>TETAPI MALAHAN</th>
<th>VERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hartono</td>
<td>bukannya</td>
<td>menyebab</td>
<td>tetapi malahan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ketika</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dipanggil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hartono</td>
<td>did not</td>
<td>answer when</td>
<td>on the contrary,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>called;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Instead of answering when called, he/she just left.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mereka</td>
<td>bukannya</td>
<td>mendengar</td>
<td>tetapi malahan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-kan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>did not</td>
<td>listen (to us);</td>
<td>on the contrary,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Instead of listening (to us), they just laughed at us.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LATIHAN 3

Complete the following sentences, then translate them into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1. Bukannya tidur dia malahan _____________.
2. Bukannya ________________ Andreas malahan membaca majalah.
3. Bukannya makan nasi ________________ malahan.
4. Bukannya minta maaf ________________ malahan.
5. Bukannya ________________ malahan meminjam uang kepada saya.
6. ________________ bukannya ________________ tetapi malahan tidur sampai siang.
7. Paman saya bukannya ________________ tetapi malahan.
8. ________________ bukannya ________________ tetapi malahan menabrak mobil merah itu.
10. ________________ bukannya takut tetapi malahan.

Summary

To say:
- 'although', 'even though', 'even if': meski(pun), walau(pun), biar(pun)
- 'although it is so', 'in spite of': meski(pun)/walau(pun)/biar(pun) begitu
- 'not ... but': bukan ... tetapi/namun/melainkan
- 'not only ... but also': bukan ... tetapi/namun/melainkan juga
- 'rather than ... in fact': bukannya ... malahan
- 'not only ... on the contrary': bukannya ... tetapi malahan
The ... More ... the ... More ...

The expression 'the more ... the more ...' indicates that something or someone undergoes a gradual change in condition or proportion.

In Indonesian we can use the following expressions to indicate such a change.

- makin ... makin ...
- (ber)tambah ... (ber)tambah ...
- kian ... kian ...

**Makin ... makin ...**

Makin is neutral in terms of formality, so we can use it for any situation.

Rita makin lama makin sombong.
Rita the longer the more arrogant.
→ Rita is getting more and more arrogant.

Harga bensin makin hari makin naik.
The price of petrol by the day increases more.
→ The price of petrol goes up every day.

We can also put the noun or noun phrase, such as 'Rita' or harga bensin, after the first makin phrase.

Makin lama Rita makin sombong.
Makin hari harga bensin makin naik.

**Handy expression**
To say 'the more the merrier' in Indonesian, we can use makin banyak makin ramai.
(Ber)tambah ... (ber)tambah ...

The expression (ber)tambah ... (ber)tambah ... means the same as makin and is used in the same way. The difference is, if we add the prefix ber- to tambah, it is a little more formal. As with makin, the noun (or noun phrase) can be placed at the beginning of the sentence or after the first (ber)tambah phrase.

Anak itu bertambah besar bertambah cantik parasnya.
That child the older the more beautiful her face.
→ That child is more beautiful the older she gets.

If we drop the prefix, the expression becomes less formal, like makin.

Kian ... kian

The expression Kian ... kian is more formal. The noun (or noun phrase) can be placed at the beginning of the sentence or after the first kian phrase.

Kami kian/hari kian jengkel.
We by the day the more annoyed.
→ We are getting more and more annoyed by the day.

LATIHAN 1

Copy and complete the following sentences, filling in the empty spaces.

KOSAKATA

- cepat marah quick to anger
- kurus thin, skinny
- perusahaan company
- petani farmer
- sulit difficult

NOUN (NOUN PHRASE) MAKin, (BER)Tambah, KIAN MAKin, (BER)Tambah, KIAN

1 makin lama
2 makin kurus
3 pemuda itu
4 kian sukses
5 petani itu
6 perokok itu
7 makin sulit
8 kian hari
9 tambah cepat marah
10 direktur perusahaan itu

Summary

- Makin ... makin, (ber)tambah ... (ber)tambah and kian ... kian all express a gradual change in condition or proportion.
- Makin ... makin and tambah ... tambah can be used for any situation, while bertambah ... bertambah and kian ... kian are more formal.
- To use them in a sentence: the noun (or noun phrase) can be placed either at the beginning or after the first makin, (ber)tambah or kian phrase.
Both ... and ... / ... As Well As ...

In Indonesian, the expression baik ... maupun is used to mean 'both ... and ...' or '... as well as ...'.

### Baik ... maupun

Here are some examples of the use of baik ... maupun.

- **Baik ibu maupun bapak saya tidak makan daging.**
  Both my mother and father do not eat meat.

- **Demonstrasi itu berlangsung baik di kota besar maupun kota kecil.**
  The demonstration took place both in big cities and small towns.

- **Anda bisa ke sana baik naik pesawat terbang maupun kapal laut.**
  You can go there both by plane and by boat.

### LATIHAN 1

Write five sentences using baik ... maupun.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>baik + someone</th>
<th>maupun + someone else</th>
<th>do or don't do something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rudi</td>
<td>Ani</td>
<td>tidak masuk sekolah hari ini.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both Rudi</td>
<td>Ani</td>
<td>did not go to school today.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write five more sentences using baik ... maupun in a different way.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>something happens</th>
<th>baik + somewhere</th>
<th>maupun + somewhere else</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Terjadi gempa bumi</td>
<td>baik di Jawa</td>
<td>maupun di Bali.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There was an earthquake</td>
<td>both in Java</td>
<td>and in Bali.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LATIHAN 2

Translate these sentences into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

1. Baik kakak maupun adik saya suka musik dangdut.
2. Hotel itu memiliki bermacam-macam fasilitas, baik untuk rekreasi maupun bisnis.
4. Siapapun dilarang masuk pabrik itu, baik pegawai maupun bukan pegawai.
5. Baik kopi maupun teh mengandung kafein.
7. Robert selalu memakai celana pendek, baik pada musim panas maupun musim dingin.
8. Baik pisang maupun pepaya banyak mengandung vitamin.
9. Sopir taksi itu bekerja keras baik siang maupun malam.
10. Baik berjalan kaki maupun berenang adalah baik untuk kesehatan.

Summary

Baik ... maupun translates into English as 'both ... and ...' or '... as well as ...'. It is used to refer to two things, two people, two places or two actions of comparable qualities or conditions.
Let Alone

To say 'let alone ..., even ...' in Indonesian, we have the following choices.

- jangankan ..., pun/saja ...
- apalagi ..., saja ...
- kok ..., saja ...
- boro-boro ..., saja ...

The last two of these expressions are more informal than the others and are used more in speaking than in writing.

**Jangankan ... pun/saja**

Jangankan (let alone) is usually placed at the beginning of a sentence, while pun or saja comes in the second part of the sentence.

- Jangankan ke Australia, ke Jakarta pun saya tidak mampu.  
  Let alone go to Australia; I can't even afford to go to Jakarta.

- Jangankan berpidato, berbicara saja dia tidak becus.  
  Let alone make a speech; he/she can't even speak properly.

**Apalagi ... saja**

Apalagi can be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

- Apalagi kamu, saya saja tidak boleh masuk.  
  Let alone you, even I'm not allowed to go in.

- Saya saja tidak boleh masuk, apalagi kamu.  
  Even I'm not allowed to go in, let alone you.
**LATIHAN 1**

Write five sentences using jangankan ... pun/saja.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JANGANKAN + DO</th>
<th>DO SOMETHING ELSE +</th>
<th>SUBJEC T + DOESN'T/CAN'T DO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jangan kan makan buah,</td>
<td>makan nasi pun</td>
<td>dia tidak mau.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let alone eat fruit,</td>
<td>even eating rice</td>
<td>he/she doesn't want to do.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write five sentences using apalagi.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT + SAJA</th>
<th>CANNOT DO SOMETHING</th>
<th>APALAGI + SOMEBODY ELSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dia saja</td>
<td>tidak bisa memecahkan</td>
<td>apalagi kamu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Even he/she</td>
<td>persoalan itu</td>
<td>let alone you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Kok ... saja and boro-boro ... saja**

As mentioned at the beginning of the chapter, sentences with kok ... saja and boro-boro ... saja are informal and therefore are usually for informal spoken situations.

- **Kok beli mobil, untuk makan saja gaji saya tidak cukup.**
  - Let alone buy a car, even to buy food my salary is not enough.

- **Boro-boro menang undian, beli karcisnya saja dia tidak pernah.**
  - Let alone win a raffle, he/she never even buys tickets.

**LATIHAN 2**

Write five sentences using kok ... saja.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KOK + SOMEONE</th>
<th>SOMEBODY ELSE + SAJA</th>
<th>DOESN'T/CAN'T DO SOMETHING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kok perawat itu,</td>
<td>dokter saja</td>
<td>tidak bisa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let alone that nurse,</td>
<td>even the doctor</td>
<td>menyembuhkan dia.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write five sentences using boro-boro ... saja.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BORO-BORO + DO</th>
<th>DO SOMETHING ELSE +</th>
<th>SUBJECT DOESN'T/ CAN'T DO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boro-boro ke sekolah,</td>
<td>bangun saja</td>
<td>saya tidak bisa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let alone go to school,</td>
<td>even getting up</td>
<td>I cannot do.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Summary

- **Jangankan, apalagi, kok and boro-boro** all mean 'let alone'; they are paired with either pun or saja (even).
- **Pun** is more formal and is therefore compatible with jangankan.
- **Jangankan** is placed at the beginning of the sentence.
- **Apalagi** can appear either at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence.
- **Kok and boro-boro** are more informal and are appropriate for casual conversation.
Imperatives

*Imperatives* are the language forms that we use to tell people to do things. This may mean giving commands, making requests, offering, inviting, urging or advising. We also use imperatives to tell people not to do something (prohibiting). These imperatives are called *negative imperatives*.

The forms that we use often depend on such things as when, where and to whom we are talking or writing. For example, the form that a teacher uses to give a command to his or her students in a classroom situation would generally be different from that used by two close friends. The first would be more formal, while the second would be less formal.

Also, certain forms tend to be used only in writing, while others are more commonly used in speaking.

In this chapter we look at these different forms and learn:
- how to choose which form(s) to use and for whom
- for which communicative situations they are appropriate

**Commands**

Commands are instructions to tell people to do something, often immediately. In English, we might say 'Stand up!', 'Go to bed!', 'Eat your dinner!' and so forth. In Indonesian, the common forms to use vary, depending on whether the verb is transitive or intransitive. If the verb is transitive, the forms to use vary, depending on whether the object is specific or non-specific.

**Commands using intransitive verbs**

In intransitive sentences, the form of the verb does not change. So, if the verb has the prefix *ber-*., this prefix remains. For example, a teacher may say this to his or her students:

**Berdiri!**
Stand up!
Similarly, if the verb has the prefix meN-, we keep this prefix. For example, if the same teacher wants the students to simply write, without specifying what to write, he or she will say:

**Menulis.**
Write.

The prefix is still retained even if the teacher specifies when the action is to be performed (for example, 'now' or 'later'), because there is no object involved.

**Membaca dahulu lalu istirahat.**
Read first, then rest.

For simple verbs, such as makan, that do not require an affix, nothing is added. Thus a mother may say to her ten-year-old daughter, who is a reluctant eater:

**Makan!**
Eat!

**Commands using transitive verbs**
In transitive sentences, the prefix meN- is dropped if the object is specific. For example, if your teacher tells you to write not simply any letter, but a letter to your penfriend, he or she will say:

**Tulis surat kepada sahabat penamu.**
Write a letter to your penfriend.

Not:

**Menulis surat kepada sahabat penamu.**

Similarly, meN- is dropped in the following sentences.

**Buka halaman 5.**
Open page 5.

**Buka pintu itu!**
Open the door!
**Did you know?**

Tone of voice has a lot to do with how our commands are interpreted. Commands may sound harsh or may be considered impolite if they are expressed in a strong or abrupt tone of voice. A softer tone may give an impression that the commands are polite and friendly.

**How to make commands more informal**

- *ayo*
- *coba*
- *ya*
- *dong*

The imperative forms that we use often depend on when, where and to whom we are talking or writing. Formal situations require more formal forms, whereas informal situations are suitable for less formal forms. Different imperative forms express different degrees of formality. The more formal a form, the more polite it is generally considered to be. However, this does not mean that informal forms are always impolite. They can be so only if we misjudge the relation that we have as a speaker with the person(s) to whom we are speaking. We can inadvertently offend people by using inappropriate forms.

To make commands less formal, we can add *ayo*, *coba*, *ya* or *dong*.

**AYO AND COBA**

The teacher giving the commands that we looked at on pages 167–8 could say the following instead.

**Ayo, berdiri!**
*Come on, stand up!*

**Ayo, menulis!**
*Come on, write!*

**Ayo, tulis surat kepada sahabat penamu!**
*Come on, write a letter to your penfriend!*

**Coba, buka halaman 5!**
*Come on, open page 5!*

**Coba, membaca dulu baru istirahat!**
*Come on, read first, then rest!*

**Coba, buka pintu itu!**
*Come on, open that door!***
Berdiri dong.
Stand up, won't you?

Pakai dong sepatumu.
Pakai sepatumu dong.
Wear your shoes, won't you?

Cuci mobilnya dong.
Cuci dong mobilnya.
Wash the car, won't you?

LATIHAN 1

Read the following commands and decide whether they are correct (Benar) or incorrect (Salah). Remember that the meN- prefix is dropped in transitive sentences if the object is specific.

1 Tidur di sana ya!
2 Coba menelpon temanmu itu!
3 Melihat foto saya!
4 Ayo, mendengarkan musik ini ya.
5 Coba, berlari ke sana!
6 Membawa anjingmu ke rumah saya ya.
7 Ayo mengetik artikel penting ini di komputer.
8 Makan buah dan sayur setiap hari ya.
9 Belikan saya es krim dong!
10 Menyimpan fotomu itu baik-baik!

How to make commands more formal

- -lah
- harap
- hendaklah/hendaknya
- mohon

We can make commands more polite and formal by adding different words or part words, such as -lah, harap, hendaklah or hendaknya and mohon. When we add these words, our commands also become more impersonal. Because of that, they would not be suitable for use with friends, family members or people with whom we have an informal relation.

-LAH

The suffix -lah is a particle. It is not commonly used in spoken Indonesian, but is included here because you are likely to come across it in short stories or novels. It is 'formal' in the sense that we would not use it in casual conversation. The addition of -lah in written Indonesian makes a command softer and it may be attached to both intransitive and transitive verbs.
Berdirilah.
*Please* stand up.

Tulislah surat kepada nenekmu.
*Please* write a letter to your grandmother.

Bukalah pintu itu.
*Please* open that door.

**HARAP**

Literally meaning 'to hope' or 'to expect', *harap* forms the intransitive verb *berharap* and the transitive verbs *mengharap* and *mengharapkan*. Its use in imperatives means something like 'you are expected to do this', even though it is-usually translated into English as 'please'. It is appropriate for use in formal announcements, where the addressee is a group of people rather than an individual.

*Harap* is usually placed at the beginning of the command, if the addressee is not mentioned. When the addressee is mentioned, *harap* is usually placed after it.

**Harap berdiri.**
*Please* stand up.

**Penumpang harap tetap duduk.**
Passengers *please* remain seated.

**MOHON**

*Mohon*, which also translates as 'please' in English, is similar to *harap* in its formality. However, unlike *harap*, *mohon* has a sense of urgency and pleading. Like *harap*, *mohon* can be placed at the beginning of the sentence, to produce a more direct command, or after the mention of the addressee, to make the command a little more indirect.

**Mohon balas surat ini segera.**
*Please* reply to this letter immediately.

**Kami mohon hadirin tetap tenang**
Literally: We ask you (the audience) to remain calm. → *Please* remain calm.

**Saya mohon anda pergi dari sini.**
Literally: I ask you to leave → *Please* get out of here.

**HENDAKLAH AND HENDAKNYA**

The word *hendak* forms a part of the noun *kehendak*, meaning 'a will or wish (to do something)'. By itself, without the prefix, it is used to indicate future action; for example, *Mereka hendak datang ke rumah saya* (They are going to come to my house). When used in commands, either -lah or -nya is attached to it. Because of their very formal nature, *hendaklah* and *hendaknya* are not common in everyday spoken Indonesian and are suitable for telling people to do abstract actions.

**Hendaklah hal ini menjadi perhatian kita semua.**
Let this matter become our concern.
Similarly, the mother telling her daughter to eat could say instead:

**Ayo, makan.**
Come on, eat.

**YA**
Ya literally means 'yes'. When used in commands, it is similar to the 'won't you/will you' tag that is used in English. It is usually placed at the end of the sentence.

**Tidur ya.**
Go to sleep, won't you?

**Makan ya.**
Eat, won't you?

**Note**
Because ya can make a command quite soft, it is less suitable for situations that demand formality. The above commands, given by a mother to her child, certainly do not mean 'Do what I say right now', but rather something like 'It would be good if you did this now'.

In transitive sentences, ya can be placed either after the verb, to emphasise the action, or at the end, which then puts the focus on the whole command.

**Lipat ya baju ini.**
Fold this shirt, won't you?

**Makan ya obatnya.**
Take the medication, won't you?

**DONG**
Dong is more informal than ayo and ya and, when used in commands, also roughly translates into English as 'won't you' or 'will you'. Like ya, dong can be placed either after the verb, to emphasise the action, or at the end of the command, to emphasise the whole command.

**Be careful!**
Because dong is informal, it is not an expression that we would use in situations that require us to observe formality, such as in ceremonial situations, public announcements or when speaking to strangers in the street or to guests. For example, one would not normally say to a priest: **Berkati saya dong** (Please bless me) or to the guests at a formal function: **Duduk dong** (Please sit down).

Dong is most appropriate when used among close friends and family members.
Hendaklah/hendaknya can also be used for reprimanding very formally.

Hendaknya Saudara mengerti betul hal ini.
Saudara hendaknya mengerti betul hal ini.
You should really understand this.

LATIHAN 2

You will find a wealth of imperatives in recipes. Below is a recipe for a Thai dessert from *Femina*, an Indonesian women’s magazine. Translate the recipe into English. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

Ketan saus mangga

Bahan:
- 200 g beras ketan putih
- 100 mL santan kental
- 3 sdm gula pasir
- 1/2 sdt garam
- 1 lembar daun pandan
- 2 buah (350 g) mangga masak pohon, kupas, iris tipis daging buahnya

Saus:
- 100 mL santan kental, rebus
- 1 sdm gula pasir halus
- 1/4 sdt garam

Cara membuat:
- Aduk ketan kukus bersama santan, gula pasir, dan garam hingga santan terhisap oleh ketan.
- Kukus kembali ketan dan daun pandan dalam dandang panas sampai matang. Angkat.
- Saus: Aduk santan kental dan gula hingga gula larut.
- Hidangkan ketan kukus bersama sausnya dan iris dari mangga.

Untuk 6 orang
Kalori per porsi: 275
sdm = sendok makan
sdt = sendok teh

*Femina* no. 14/IXV, 10–16 April 1997, p. 177

Did you know?
Gula pasir literally means ‘sand sugar’, because the granules look like sand. ‘Icing sugar’ is gula halus, which literally means fine or smooth sugar (because it is in powder form).

Beras ketan means ‘glutinous rice’. Have you seen or tasted it? If not, next time you go to an Asian grocery, you might like to buy some.
Did you know these different words for 'rice' in Indonesian?

- **padi**: rice plant
- **beras**: uncooked rice
- **beras merah**: red rice (in Indonesia, often given as a food supplement for babies)
- **nasi**: cooked rice
- **nasi putih**: plain steamed rice
- **nasi goreng**: fried rice
- **ketan hitam**: black glutinous rice (used for black rice pudding)

### Requests

- **minta**

Requesting means that we are asking for something or to be allowed to do something. This is rather different from commands, where we are telling people to do something. Some examples of requests are:

- a boss requesting a document to be typed
- a student requesting an extension for an assignment
- a doctor requesting a blood test to be done on his or her patient
- a friend requesting help with homework

In Indonesian, the word **minta** can be used to ask for something. This use of **minta** in imperatives translates into English as 'Can I/we ...?'. Of course, requests are not restricted to this word; other verbs can be used as well, as we can see below.

**Minta nasinya.**
Can I have some rice?

**Minta kertas dua lembar lagi.**
Can I have two more sheets of paper?

**Bagi kuinya.**
Can I have a share of the cake?

**Ketikkan surat ini.**
Type this letter for me.

### How to make requests more informal

- **ya**
- **dong**

As with commands, we can use **ya** and **dong** in certain situations to make our requests more informal and less abrupt.
Minta nasinya ya.
Minta nasinya dong.
Can I have some rice, please?

Bagi kuenya ya.
Bagi kuenya dong.
Share the cake, please.

Ketikkan surat ini ya.
Ketikkan surat ini dong.
Type this letter for me, please.

How to make requests more polite

- tolong
- minta tolang

Requests can be made more polite by adding the word tolong, which literally means ‘help’, but which, when used in requests, means ‘please (do something)’. Because tolong is polite, but not overly formal, it can be used for a wide variety of situations and with different addressees (with friends, strangers, teachers, parents and so on). We should note that, even though tolong can be translated as ‘please’ in English, it cannot be used for offering (for example, ‘Please eat’, ‘Please let me do it’) or for invitations (for example, ‘Please come to the party’).

When we use tolong, the meN- prefix is dropped.

Tolong bantu saya.
Please help me.

Tolong pegangkan payung ini.
Please hold this umbrella (for me).

Tolong panggilkan polisi.
Please call the police (for me).

Tolong can be combined with minta, to make the request more urgent.

Minta tolong panggilkan polisi.
Please help call the police.

We can also combine tolong with ya and dong, to make polite but informal (and friendly) requests. Ya and dong can be placed either after tolong, to emphasise politeness, or at the end of the sentence, to emphasise the whole request.

Tolong ya jagakan tas saya.
Tolong jagakan tas saya ya.
Would you please mind my bag for me?

Tolong ya temani bapak ke toko.
Tolong temani bapak ke toko ya.
Would you please accompany father to the shop?
Very formal requests

- **sudilah (kiranya)**

If we want to make very formal and very polite requests to someone in a very high position, we can use *sudilah* or *sudilah kiranya*. These expressions mean ‘I/we hope you are willing to do this’. *Sudilah (kiranya)* is hardly used in spoken Indonesian because of its highly formal nature, so we certainly would not want to use it with friends or family.

*Sudilah (kiranya) bapak Presiden menghadiri pertemuan kami.*

*We hope you, Mr President, are willing to attend our meeting.*

### Latihan 3

Use appropriate words for requesting in the following situations. Consider who you are talking to and choose the most suitable form for each request. The verb that you need to use is given in parentheses. (Drop the *me*-prefix, if appropriate.)

1. You have an early appointment with the dentist tomorrow and you are not good at waking up early. Ask your brother to *wake you up* at 7 a.m. *(membangunkan)*
2. You have just rung your teacher at school to tell her that you are sick, but she was in class. Leave a message with the secretary to pass on to your teacher when she returns, *informing* her that you are sick. *(memberitahukan)*
3. You are about to send a payment for your annual magazine subscription through the mail. You want the magazine to *send you* a receipt. Write your request. *(mengirimkan)*

### Inviting

- **mari**
- **ayo**
- **yuk**

Inviting can mean two things: we may invite someone to join in an activity, such as going to the movies, or we may invite someone to come to our place or to a function, such as a birthday party. Indonesian has different verbs to express these two meanings of inviting: *mengajak* and *mengundang*.

Inviting can be expressed as a question (for example, ‘Would you like to go to the movies?’) or as an imperative (for example, ‘Let’s go to the movies’, ‘Drop by any time’). In this chapter, we look at the imperative forms only.
We can use mari and ayo for inviting someone to join in an activity (mengajak). Both are usually placed at the beginning of a sentence and are very common in spoken Indonesian. The difference between them is in their degree of formality: mari is more formal than ayo.

- **Mari kita pulang.** Let's go home.
- **Ayo kita makan dulu.** Let's eat first.
- **Ayo jalan-jalan sore ini.** Let's go out this evening.

Ayo is often shortened to yuk and can be placed either at the beginning of the sentence or right at the end. Yuk is even less formal than ayo and, because of that, we can use it with friends. For instance, you can say the following to your close friend, but not to your teacher:

- **Yuk kita ke perpustakaan.**
  - **Kita ke perpustakaan yuk.** Let's go to the library.

We can also use mari, ayo and yuk to invite someone to our place or function (mengundang).

- **Mari mampir ke rumah.**
  - **Mampir ke rumah yuk.**
  - **Mampir ke rumah yuk.**
    - Do drop by.

If we want to be polite and more formal, we can use silakan ('please') for mengundang (but not for mengajak). For example, you could say the following to your mother's friend who comes to visit.

- **Silakan masuk, Bu.** Please come in.
  - **Silakan duduk, saya akan panggil ibu saya.** Please sit down; I will call my mother.

With your friends, however, you may prefer to use ya or dong alongside the verb. Your offers would resemble commands when you do this.

- **Masuk dong, jangan di luar.** Come in; don't stay outside.
  - **Duduk dulu ya, saya ke kamar sebentar.** Have a seat; I have to go to my room for a minute.
  - **Datang ya ke pesta saya.**
  - **Datang dong ke pesta saya.**
    - Come to my party.

### LATIHAN 4

Use appropriate words for inviting in the following situations. Consider who you are talking to and choose the most suitable form for each invitation. The verbs are given in parentheses. (Drop the meN- prefix, if appropriate.)
1 Invite your close friend to come and stay the night at your place. (menginap)
2 Invite your younger sister to go and have a coffee with you. (minum kopi)
3 Invite your friend's parents to come to your school concert on Saturday. (datang)

Offering

Offering can be understood to mean 'offering to do something for someone' or 'offering something to someone'. We can express the first meaning using ayo, mari and biar—all of which roughly mean '(come on, here) let me (or someone else) do it' when used in offering. All of them are placed at the beginning of the sentence.

As with the other uses, ayo makes the imperative more informal. However, its use here differs from the previous ones in that here the action is to be performed by the speaker, not the addressee. As in invitation, mari is more polite and formal. Biar, on the other hand, is polite, but neutral in terms of formality.

**Ayo** saya cucikan bajunya.
Come on, let me wash the clothes for you.

**Mari** saya bawakan kopernya.
Here, let me carry the suitcase for you.

**Biar** bapak saya yang mengantarkan dia ke sekolah.
Let my father take her to school.

The second sense of offering is expressed by using silakan and also ayo. As with their use in invitation, the difference between these two words lies in their degree of formality: silakan is more formal than ayo.

**Silakan** minum.
**Ayo** minum.
Please drink.

**LATIHAN 5**

Use appropriate words for offering in the following situations. Consider who you are talking to and choose the most suitable form for each offer. The verbs are given in parentheses. (Drop the meN-prefix, if appropriate.)

1 Your older sister has just said that she will make a cup of coffee. Offer to make one for her. (membuatkan)
2 Your mother is going to put your little brother to bed. Offer to do that for her. (menidurkan)
3 You have an exciting job promoting Australian apples in Indonesia. Encourage passers-by to try the apples. (mencoba)

Advising

- sebaiknya

A word that we can use to give advice to people is sebaiknya, meaning 'it is best that' or 'you had better'. This word is polite and a little formal.

Sebaiknya kau tanya ibumu dulu.
Kau sebaiknya tanya ibumu dulu.
It is best that you ask your mother first/You had better ask your mother first.

Although sebaiknya is generally used for advising, it can also be used to give a polite command and can be placed either at the beginning of the sentence or after the mention of the addressee.

Sebaiknya Saudara keluar kelas.
Saudara sebaiknya keluar kelas.
It is best that you leave this class/You had better leave this class.

LATIHAN 6

Your Indonesian penfriend is coming to Australia. In Indonesian, give five points of advice (nasehat) to your friend about things that he or she should bring or do before departure. Copy and complete the following table, beginning each piece of advice with sebaiknya.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nasehat 1: Sebaiknya</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nasehat 2: Sebaiknya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasehat 3: Sebaiknya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasehat 4: Sebaiknya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasehat 5: Sebaiknya</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How to say 'do not'

- jangan
- dilarang
- tidak usah/tidak perlu

Often we wish to tell people not to do something. The forms that we use to do this are called negative imperatives. In Indonesian, we have a choice of jangan, dilarang and tidak usah.
**Jangan**

This word simply means 'do not' and is neutral in terms of politeness and formality. Depending on how formal or urgent we want our sentence to be, we can also add tolong, ya and dong. As with the other uses, tolong makes a polite prohibition, whereas ya and dong create a sense of informality.

**Note**

When we use jangan, we can either keep or drop the meN- prefix.

- **Jangan (mem)baca sambil makan.**
  Don’t read while eating.

- **Jangan (mem)baca sambil makan ya.**
  Don’t read while eating, will you?

- **Jangan (mem)baca sambil makan dong.**
  Don’t read while eating, will you?

- **Tolong jangan (mem)baca sambil makan.**
  Please don’t read while eating.

Jangan can be also used alongside mohon, harap, tolong, coba, ayo, hendaknya and sebaiknya.

- **Harap jangan berdiri.** (formal, impersonal command)
  Please do not stand up.

- **Mohón jangan bicara keras-keras.** (formal, impersonal command)
  Please don’t speak too loudly.

- **Tolong jangan panggil polisi.** (polite request)
  Please don’t call the police.

- **Coba jangan menangis begitu.** (informal urging)
  Come on, don’t cry like that.

- **Ayo jangan mencontoh pekerjaan temanmu.** (informal urging)
  Come on, don’t copy your friend’s work.

- **Sebaiknya jangan keluar kelas.** (polite advice)
  You had better not leave the class.

**LATIHAN 7**

Here is a cartoon strip from *Kisah Petualangan Tintin 'Bintang Jatuh'*. The third picture contains negative imperatives with jangan. Find out the meaning of the negative imperatives.
Dilarang

Literally meaning ‘it is prohibited’, this word is the passive form of the verb melarang (to prohibit) and is used primarily for public notices (official prohibitions). For instance, the following notice may be found at a spot where pedlars are not supposed to have their base of operations.

Dilarang berjualan di sini.
Do not do any selling here.

Other common notices are:

Dilarang membuang sampah di sini.
Do not throw rubbish here.

Dilarang masuk.
Do not enter.

Imperatives using dilarang are impersonal, formal and mostly used in written Indonesian. The person doing the prohibiting is not stated, but can be assumed. Because of this impersonal nature, we would not use this form in casual speech except in jest; for example, to tell a friend not to come to our house, or to tell your older sister not to be angry with you.
Here is a picture showing a public sign with dilarang. What does the sign mean in English?

**LATIHAN 8**

Tidak usah or tidak perlu

Both tidak usah (don’t bother) and tidak perlu (there is no need) can be used for a wide variety of situations. Like jangan, these expressions are neutral in formality and politeness. However, jangan is more direct and, therefore, can be very appropriate if we want stronger prohibitions (for example, when we feel like being particularly harsh to someone). As with jangan, the meN- prefix can be kept or dropped when we use tidak usah or tidak perlu.

- **Tidak perlu datang pagi-pagi sekali.**
  There is no need to come too early. (Don’t come too early.)
- **Tidak usah (mem)beritahu ayahmu.**
  Don’t bother to tell your father. (Don’t tell your father)
- **Tidak usah repot-repot bawa kado.**
  There is no need to bring a present. (Don’t bother to bring a present.)

**LATIHAN 9**

Copy and complete the following table, giving five points of advice to your friends, who are about to go to Indonesia, on things that they should not do or that they do not need to do. Use jangan, dilarang, tidak usah or tidak perlu.

Example:

Illegal drugs are prohibited, so you should not carry any.
There are lots of mosquitoes at night, so you should take some mosquito repellent.

Nasehat 1:
Nasehat 2:
Nasehat 3:
Nasehat 4:

**LATIHAN 10**

Below are some situations in which negative imperatives are appropriate. Write a sentence for each situation, using jangan, dilarang, tidak usah or tidak perlu.

1. You are inviting a friend to your birthday party. Tell him that he does not need to bring a present (membawa), but that he should not be late (terlambat).
2. Your little brother or sister keeps nagging you while you are studying. Tell him or her to stop bothering you (mengganggu).
3. You have been asked to put up a sign in class in Indonesian that prohibits people from using their mobile phones (telepon genggam) in class. What would you write? (memakai)
4. You have just failed your exam and feel terrible about it. Your teacher is telling you not to be discouraged. What would he or she say? (berkecil hati)
5. Your friend is new to town. You want to advise her not to go out at night by herself. What would you say? (keluar)

---

**Imperatives in object-focus**

Imperatives that are expressed as transitive sentences often appear in the object-focus (passive).

Object-focus imperatives are usually considered more polite, non-offensive and less direct than their corresponding subject-focus (active) imperatives, because the focus of our attention is shifted from the doer of the action (which, in most cases, is the person to whom we are speaking) to the object of the sentence. It is like saying 'Let this be done', rather than 'You do this'. This form of imperative is also very common in Indonesian, but often cannot be translated literally into English.

We can use object-focus imperatives for a wide variety of situations and with anybody. In fact, if you are not sure about whether or not you are being polite enough when you use the forms we have discussed so far, it is probably best to resort to the object-focus forms.

Object-focus imperatives are not the easiest forms to learn, but they represent a more natural way of saying 'Do this' in Indonesian.
Transforming subject-focus imperatives into object-focus imperatives

The rules for transforming subject-focus imperatives into object-focus imperatives are the same as those discussed in Chapter 19. The only differences are that, in subject-focus imperatives:

- there are imperative word(s) in the sentence
- the main verb has no prefix

Note

Only imperatives that use transitive verb(s) can be transformed into object-focus imperatives. (If there is no object, as in intransitive imperatives, there is nothing to be transformed.)

To make an object-focus imperative, follow these steps.

- Shift the object to the subject position or to a position following the imperative word(s), if there is no subject.
- Follow the object-focus rules for changing the verb form for first, second or third person.
- Keep the imperative word(s) and other words, such as adverb and prepositional phrase, where they are.

Prohibition:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jangan</th>
<th>beritahu ayahmu. (Subject-focus)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Negative imperative</td>
<td>Verb Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not</td>
<td>tell your father.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jangan</th>
<th>ayahmu diberitahu. (Object-focus)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Negative imperative</td>
<td>Object di- verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literally: Don't let your father be told.</td>
<td>Don't let your father know.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Request:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tolong ya temani bapak ke toko. (Subject-Focus)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperative Verb Object Prepositional phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please accompany father to the shop, won't you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tolong ya bapak ditemani ke toko. (Object-Focus)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperative Object di- verb Prepositional phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literally: Please father be accompanied to the shop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LATIHAN 11

Transform the following subject-focus imperatives into object-focus imperatives. The meaning of each object-focus imperative is provided. Remember that you have to follow the rules for first, second and third person subject for object-focus rules (refer to Chapter 19).
LATIHAN 12

To further test how well you can shift your focus from the doer of the action to the object of that action, convert the following subject-focus imperatives into object-focus imperatives. Then translate each sentence into English.

1 Parent to a young child:
   a Ayo, pakai bajunya dulu.
   b Pakai dong sepatunya.
   c Ayo, minum susunya.

2 An employee to his or her boss:
   a Biar saya angkat barangnya.
   b Maaf Bu, minta tolong tandatangani cek ini.

3 To your close friend:
   a Tolong dong pinjami saya uang.
   b Antarkan saya ke dokter besok ya.

4 A teacher to his/her students:
   a Baca bab 6 untuk minggu depan.
   b Bantu temanmu yang baru itu.
   c Ketik tugas itu.
LATIHAN 13

Here is an interesting small rubric from the Indonesian newspaper Kompas. Find out what it is about. You may need to consult your dictionary for this exercise.

Yohanes Surya, Ph.D.

FISIKA itu ASYIK

Ambil UANG LOGAM, susun seperti gambar.
Letakkan GELAS berisi air di atasnya dan PIRING di atas gelas tersebut.
Lihat ke arah uang di bawah gelas, uang lenyap!

MENGAPA?

COBALAH!

Masukkan TELUR dalam TOPLES berisi air garam.
Telur akan terapung (gambar a).
Tuang air tawar ke dalam toples itu hingga penuh (gambar b).
Ternyata telur berada di tengah.

MENGAPA?

Jawab:
- Menurut fisika, orang bisa melihat benda karena ada sinar datang dari benda ke mata. Sinar dan uang logam dibaskan air. Sinar bias ini terhalang oleh piring hingga tidak sampai di mata. Itu sebabnya mata tidak dapat melihat uang tersebut.
- Menurut fisika, benda dengan massa jenis lebih besar akan tenggelam. Massa jenis telur lebih besar dari massa jenis air tawar tetapi lebih kecil dari massa jenis air garam. Itu sebabnya telur tenggelam di air tawar tetapi terapung di air garam.
Summary

- Imperatives: commands, requests, offering, inviting, urging, advising
- Negative imperatives: 'Do not'
- For intransitive verbs: no change to the verb
- For transitive verbs: drop the meN- prefix if the object is specific; retain if not
- Commands:
  - Informal: ya, ayo, coba, dong
  - Formal: -lah, harap, mohon, hendaklah/nya
- Requests: minta
  - Informal: minta ya, minta dong
  - Polite: tolong (ya/dong), minta tolong (ya/dong)
  - Formal: sudilah (kiranya)
- Inviting: mari, ayo, yuk, silakan
- Offering: ayo, mari, biar, silakan
- Advising: sebalknya
- Negative imperatives: jangan, dilarang, tidak usah or tidak perlu
 Reporting What Has Been Said

Often we like to tell other people what someone has said or repeat what we ourselves have said. We do this either by quoting what has been said directly (direct speech) or indirectly (indirect speech); for example, using ‘he/she/we/I/you/they said ...’. In writing, direct speech is indicated by quotation marks.

Direct reporting:

He said: 'The police came to our house last night.'
I said to her: 'I forgot to return the library books.'

Indirect reporting:

He said that the police came to their house last night.
I said to her that I had forgotten to return the library books.

In this chapter we will learn how to report directly and indirectly in Indonesian.

'Say' verbs in Indonesian

To report directly in Indonesian, we can use the following words.

- **berkata/mengatakan** (to say)
- **bertanya** (to ask a question)
- **berujar** (to say, to comment)
- **bilang** (to say) (informal)
- **menambah** (to add)

Direct reporting

There are two ways to report or quote directly in Indonesian: one is by putting the ‘he/she/we/I/you/they said ...’ part in front; the other is by putting it after we quote what was said.
If we put the ‘he/she/we/I/you/they said …’ part first, the prefix ber- or me- is retained (except for the verb bilang, which does not have a prefix).

Kakak saya berkata: ‘Besok saya akan ke planetarium.’
My older sibling said: ‘Tomorrow I will go to the planetarium.’

Mereka bertanya: ‘Kapan hari ulang tahunmu?’
They asked: ‘When is your birthday?’

If we quote first, the prefix is dropped and the subject (the person whose words you quote) comes after the verb.

‘Besok saya akan ke planetarium,’ kata kakak saya.
‘Tomorrow I will go to the planetarium,’ my older sibling said.

‘Kapan hari ulang tahunmu?’ tanya mereka.
‘When is your birthday?’ they asked.

If the subject is dia, it becomes -nya when the quote is mentioned first.

Dia bertanya: ‘Kapan hari ulang tahunmu?’
He/she asked: ‘When is your birthday?’

‘Kapan hari ulang tahunmu?’ tanyanya.
‘When is your birthday?’ she asked.

Note

Bilang is an exception. Unlike the other words, its form does not change, whether you put it before or after the quote. It always follows the subject and it is never prefixed.

Dia bilang: ‘Saya melihat hantu tadi malam.’
He/she said: ‘I saw a ghost last night.’

‘Saya melihat hantu tadi malam,’ dia bilang.
‘I saw a ghost last night,’ he/she said.

Remember that this verb is informal and is therefore more suitable for casual conversation or for e-mailing friends.

LATIHAN 1

Copy and complete the following, filling in the direct quote part of each sentence. Remember to put in the quotation marks.

KOSAKATA

| mahasiswa | university students |
| orang gila | mad person |

1. Orang gila itu bilang:
2. Teman saya menambah:
3. Orang itu berjajar:
4. Dokter Ratu berkata:
5. Para mahasiswa bertanya:
7. Ular sopir eruk itu.
8. Bapak saya bilang.
10. Tambah mereka.
Indirect reporting

There are different ways to report indirectly, depending on what kind of sentence we are reporting.

Using bahwa for statements
If the sentence that we are reporting is a statement, we use bahwa (that) after the 'say' verb.

- Dia berkata/mengatakan bahwa dia beragama Islam.
  He/she said that he/she is a Muslim.

- Anak kecil itu berkata/mengatakan bahwa dia suka sekali makan permen.
  That child said that he/she really likes eating lollies.

Using apakah for 'yes' or 'no' questions
If what we are reporting is a question requiring a 'yes' or 'no' answer, we use apakah (if, whether), after the verb bertanya (to ask a question).

- Indri bertanya apakah saya pernah melihat hantu.
  Indri asked if I had ever seen a ghost.

- Saya bertanya kepada kamu apakah mau ikut dan kamu bilang tidak.
  I asked you whether you wanted to come along and you said you didn't.

LATIHAN 2

Report what the animals and people in the following pictures say using either bahwa (for statements) or apakah (for 'yes' or 'no' questions).

Anda, kelihatan hebat sekali, Pak Buaya!
Reporting a 'wh-' question

- apa (what)
- siapa (who)
- berapa (how many/how much)
- mengapa (why)
- bagaimana (how)
- yang mana (which one)

If what we are reporting is a 'wh-' question (see Chapter 1), such as those listed above, we do not need to add anything after the verb bertanya, as shown in the following pictures.
Mereka bertanya:
1. Siapa nama Saudara?
2. Berapa umur Saudara?
3. Saudara bersekolah di mana?
4. Mengapa Saudara tidak mempunyai pekerjaan?
5. Mengapa Saudara ingin bekerja di perusahaan kami?
6. Kapan Saudara bisa mulai?

Banyak sekali pertanyaannya!
Mereka bertanya:
1. siapa nama saya
2. berapa umur saya
3. saya bersekolah di mana
4. mengapa saya tidak mempunyai pekerjaan
5. mengapa saya ingin bekerja di perusahaan mereka
6. kapan saya bisa mulai?

Mereka bertanya apa di interview?

Reporting a command
To report a command, we can use the following verbs and add supaya or agar after them.

- menyuruh (to tell someone to do something) + supaya (to)
- meminta (to ask to do something, to request) + supaya (to)
Sopir bis berkata: 'Jangan merokok di dalam bis ini!'  
The bus driver said: 'Don't smoke on this bus!'  

Sopir bis menyuruh penumpang supaya jangan merokok di dalam bis itu.  
The driver told the passengers not to smoke on that bus.  

Guru berkata kepada murid-murid: 'Kumpulkan tugas itu besok.'  
The teacher said to the students: 'Submit the work tomorrow.'  

Guru menyuruh murid-murid supaya mengumpulkan tugas itu besok.  
The teacher told the students to submit the work tomorrow.  

If the prefix of the verb in the command has been dropped (see Chapter 28), put it back.  

Rini berkata: 'Bantu saya ya.'  
Rini said: 'Help me, won't you?'  

Rini meminta saya supaya membantu dia.  
Rini asked me to help her.  

Bapak berkata kepada saya: 'Tolong buang sampah ini.'  
Father said to me: 'Please throw this rubbish away.'  

Bapak meminta saya supaya membuang sampah itu.  
Father asked me to throw that rubbish away.  

LATIHAN 3  
Look at the following sets of pictures. Picture A has a command in direct speech. Write a sentence for Picture B using indirect speech, reporting what is said in Picture A.  
1 Picture A  

Picture B  

Reporting What Has Been Said
Summary

- 'Say' verbs: berkata/mengatakan, bertanya, berujar, bilang, menambah
- Direct reporting:
  - Subject + 'say' verb (with prefix): '...
  - 'say' verb (no prefix) + subject
  - Exception: bilang (no change) → informal
- Indirect reporting:
  - Use bahwa ('that') for statements, apakah ('if, whether') for 'yes' or 'no'
    questions.
  - There is no need to add anything for 'wh-' questions.
  - Use menyuruh/meminta + supaya for commands.
# Glossary

The following are the grammatical terms used in this book. The definition of each term is already given in the relevant chapters; however, this list may be useful as a quick reference.

**abstract noun** A noun that refers to something we cannot see or touch (e.g. perasaan ‘emotion, feeling’).

**adjective** A word that describes the quality of people (e.g. cantik ‘beautiful’), things (e.g. bagus ‘nice, good’), or places (e.g. jauh ‘far’).

**adverb** A word that indicates such things as frequency (e.g. lima kali ‘five times’), manner (e.g. pelan-pelan ‘slowly’), or time (e.g. pagi ini ‘this morning’).

**affix** A term used to refer to an incomplete word that is attached to the front or end of a base word.

**agent** A person (or another animate being) who is the instigator of an action.

**aspect** A word that shows whether an action is in process, completed or not yet completed (e.g. sedang ‘in process of’, sudah ‘already’, belum ‘not yet’).

**auxiliary verb** A word that expresses such things as aspect or modality and usually occurs before the main verb.

**benefactive sentence** A sentence construction involving a transitive verb that indicates that the action is done for the benefit of someone else. In Indonesian, the verb is usually suffixed by -kan.

**beneficiary** A person (or other animate being) who benefits from the action indicated by the verb.

**causative sentence** A sentence construction involving a transitive verb that indicates that the action ‘causes’ something to become what is indicated by the base word. In Indonesian, the verb has the suffix -kan (e.g. membersihkan ‘to cause something to become clean, to clean’) or -i (e.g. mengotori ‘to cause something to become dirty’).

**circumfix** A combination of a prefix and suffix, both attached to the same base word (e.g. meN-kan in membesarkan).

**classifier** A word whose function is to classify nouns according to shape or size (e.g. ekor ‘tail’ in seekor anjing ‘a dog’).

**conditional sentence** A sentence construction expressing a hypothesis or condition; an ‘if’ sentence.

**conjunction** A word that joins or links one part of a sentence to another.

**demonstrative** A pointing word (e.g. ini ‘this’, itu ‘that’).

**direct speech** A sentence used to tell other people what someone has said using the actual words uttered by that person.

**ditransitive sentence** A sentence construction involving a transitive verb that is followed by two objects, the first being the primary object and the second, the secondary object.

**head** The main word in a phrase. In a noun phrase (e.g. kamar mandi ‘bathroom’) the noun (kamar) is the head, while in a prepositional phrase (e.g. di rumah ‘at home’) the preposition (di) is the head.

**imperative** The sentence construction used to tell someone to do something. Imperative sentences range from commands and requests to invitations and offers.
indirect speech  A sentence used to report what someone has said using our own words (i.e. not merely quoting).

interrogative sentence  A sentence that expresses a question.

intransitive verb  A verb that does not take an object (e.g. lari ‘run’, tidur ‘sleep’).

modality  A word that expresses such concepts as possibility (e.g. barangkali ‘maybe’), necessity (e.g. harus ‘must’) or ability (e.g. bisa ‘can’).

negative imperative  An imperative form used to tell people not to do something (prohibition).

noun  A word referring to either a person or a thing. When the thing cannot be seen or touched, the noun is called an ‘abstract noun’.

noun phrase  A group of words in which the noun is the main (head) word (e.g. kamar tidur ‘bedroom’).

object  A noun or noun phrase that occurs directly after a transitive verb in a subject-focus (active) sentence. If the object refers to an entity affected by the action, it is called ‘patient’; if it refers to an entity that benefits from the action, it is called ‘beneficiary’ or ‘recipient’.

object-focus sentence  A sentence construction in which the patient/beneficiary/recipient of the action is mentioned first because it is the focus of our attention.

patient  An entity (person or thing) that is the object of a transitive verb and is affected by the action of the verb (e.g. dia in saya memukul dia).

phrase  A group of words that function like a noun. A phrase in which the main word is a noun is called a noun phrase.

prefix  An affix that is put before a base word.

preposition  A word that occurs before a noun, noun phrase or pronoun to indicate a location or time (e.g. di, pada, kepada).

prepositional phrase  A phrase that typically consists of a preposition followed by a noun or temporal phrase (e.g. di rumah ‘at home’, pada jam 5 ‘at 5 o’clock’).

primary object  The object that directly follows the verb in a ditransitive construction.

pronoun  A word that can substitute for a noun referring to an entity that is known (e.g. saya ‘I’, mereka ‘they’).

reciprocal verb  A verb that indicates a mutual action or relationship between two people or objects (e.g. berpandangan ‘look at each other’).

secondary object  An object that follows the primary object in a ditransitive sentence.

stative verb  A verb that describes a state rather than an action (e.g. tertutup ‘upside down, back to front’).

subject  A noun or noun phrase that generally goes before the verb and refers to the ‘doer’ of an action.

subject-focus sentence  A sentence in which the subject gets the focus of our attention and is mentioned first before the verb.

suffix  An affix that is attached to the end of a base word.

tag  A word that is like a question word and is added at the end of a statement, either to ask a question or to tell someone about something (e.g. bukan in Itu Hasan, bukan? ‘That’s Hasan, isn’t it?’).

topic-comment sentence  A sentence in which there is a topic (something the sentence is focused on) commented upon in the rest of the sentence.

transitive verb  A verb that takes an object and this object directly follows it (e.g. membeli ‘buy’). Some verbs can have both a transitive and intransitive use (e.g. makan ‘eat’).

verb  A word that refers to an action (e.g. makan ‘to eat’) or state (e.g. tertutup ‘shut’).
abstract nouns
  ke-an 105
  and -nya 140-1
ada, uses of 38-40
adalah 29-32
adjectives
  -an forming an adjective 116
  ke-an 102-3
  meN- 73
  meN-kan 82
  peN- 112
adverbs 125, 130
advising 179
'although' 155-7
'an
  forming an adjective 116
  forming an adverb 117
  forming a noun 114-15
  with numbers 116-17
answers 7-9
apa: 'what' 3, 191
(apabila) 146-7
apakah, using 1-2, 9, 190
apalagi ... saja 164
auxiliary verb 125, 130
ayo 169, 176, 178
bagaimana
  'how' 4, 191
  what if 150
baik ... maupun 162
'because', ways to say 142-5
ber- 61-4, 122
intransitive verbs 167
irregular action of motion 65
+ numeral 64
plural 67
reciprocity 65
reduplicated 66-7
ber-an 64-5
(bertambah ... bertambah ... 161
biar 178
biar(pun) 155
bilang 188, 189
bisa 8-9
boleh 8-9
boro-boro ... saja 165
bukan 5-6, 7
bukan ... melainkan 157
bukannya 158
classifiers 24
coba 169
commands 167-74
comparing 41-6
conditionals 146
conjunctions 151
dari(pada) 41-2, 43
direct reporting 188-9
'do not', how to say 179-83
dong 169, 170-1, 174
'even if' 155-6
'even though' 155-6
fractions 23-4
gara-gara 143
garap 171, 172
gendahlah 171, 172-3
hala 29-32
'if', ways to say 146-50
imperatives 167-84
  in object-focus 183-5
indirect reporting 190-4
inviting 176-8
iya 6
jangan 179, 180
jangankan ... pun/saja 164
jika 146
jumlah 26
kalah 42
kalau 146
kapan: 'when' 4, 151
ke- 33, 34, 97-8
'the + number' 23
ke-an 97-8
abstract nouns 105
adjectives 102-3
verbs 100-2
kenapa: 'why' 4
ketika 151
kian ... kian 161
kok ... saja 165
kurang 43-4
kurang lebih 26
-lah 171-2
(lantar) 144-5
lebih dari(pada) 41-2
less than 41-4
let alone 164-5
makin 160
malahan 158
mari 176, 178
maupun 162
maupun
maupun 162
mcl
maupun 162
maupun
maupun 162
maupun
maupun 162
maupun
maupun 162
maupun
meN- 68-73
adjectives 73
intransitive verbs 71-3, 168
sound changes 68-9
transitive verbs 70-1
meN-i verbs 85-91, 120
meN-kan 76-82, 120, 122
adjectives 82
benefactive 78-9
causative 77-8
mengajak 176
mengundang 176
mentang-mentang 143-4
merupakan 31-2
meski(pun) 155
more than 41-4
most 44-5
not ... but 157-9
noun(s)
abstract, ke-an 105
abstract and -nya 140-1
-an forming a noun 114-15
peN- 108-11
per-an 119-20, 122
noun phrases 12-19
numbers 20-7
-nya
as equivalent of 'the' 136-7
exclamation 137
in topic-comment sentences 139-40
to be polite 136
to form abstract nouns 140-1
to show possession 136

object-focus 124, 125-8
and transforming subject-focus 128-9
imperatives 183-5
questions 131
with unmentioned subject 132
offering 178
paling 44
peN- 108-13
peN-an 119-20
per-an 119, 120
prepositional phrase 130
prepositions 33-7
quantity 28
reporting
direct 188-9
indirect 190-4
requests 174-6
sambil 152-3
same as 45-6
'say' verbs in Indonesian 188
se- 45
seandainya 147-8
sebaiknya 179
sementara 152
seumpama(nya) 147
stative ter- verbs 93
subject-focus 124-5, 128-30
imperatives 184
sudilah 176
ter- 44
abilitative 96
accidental action:
transitive 95-6
adjectives 92
and ke- or ke-an 97-8
reduplicated 98-9
stative verbs 93
superlative 44
tetapi malahan 158
tidak 7, 8
tidak perlu 179, 182
tidak usah 179, 182
'to be' 29-32
tolong 175, 180
topic-comment sentences 139-40

verbs
auxiliary 125
intransitive 50-3, 57-9, 89-90, 167-8
ke-an 100-2
meN- 77, 80, 119
meN-i 85-91, 120
meN-kan 77, 80-1, 87, 88, 89, 120
'say' 188
ter- 93-6
transitive 50, 54-6, 57-9, 168-9
see also ber-
waktu 151
walau(pun) 155
'wh-' words, questions with 3-4
what if 150
'when' 151
'which (one)?' 48
'while' 151, 152-4
ya 5-6, 8, 169, 170, 174
yang, uses of 47-9
yuk 176
Appendix
How do you say it in Indonesian?

This appendix contains a list of approximately 100 high-frequency English words with their Indonesian translations, covering a range of phrasal verbs and other idioms. It is, of course, not exhaustive. It aims to assist an English-speaking student who wants to know how to say or write a particular word in Indonesian. Experience in teaching has shown that it may be difficult to make a choice among the various renderings to be found in a dictionary, and there is often a tendency to be too literal when translating.

The method is to ask oneself: “What does this word actually mean?” When we reflect on this, several different meanings may present themselves, each with quite different translations into Indonesian. If you get it wrong, the results may be amusing or nonsensical! Of course, we encourage the learner always to double-check in a good dictionary, in order to survey all the possible forms. But in no circumstances should an electronic translation machine be used; as an experiment we looked up the English idiom “on the spur of the moment” – you know what that means (“without a second thought, spontaneously”), and certainly not the literal translation di atas pacu saat.

A final hint is to remember the subtle differences that may exist between colloquial and formal expressions, because we need to take these into consideration when choosing the best equivalent in good Indonesian.

Special thanks are due to Katherine Davidsen, Johansjah Sugianto and Linda Hibbs for reading this list and offering valuable suggestions.

A/AN
In many cases this has no translation, e.g. (where indefiniteness is intended): afflicted by an eye disease diserang penyakit mata
She’s a clever girl. Dia gadis pandai.
But where it means ‘one’:
Se-: Rp. 25,000 a packet Rp 25,000 sebungkus
Seorang: a medical student seorang mahasiswa kedokteran
Sebuah: a large truck sebuah truk besar
a kind of sebangsa/semacam/sejenis
it’s a pity/shame sayang
it’s a pleasure senang sekali
it’s an honour merupakan kehormatan
it’s an insult kurang ajar!

ABLE
See can, could: bisa, dapat.
Also: mampu able to afford: He can buy a car. Dia mampu membeli mobil.
Sempat to get the chance, succeed in, get to, manage to, still be able to:
They were able to nab the thief at the crossroads.

Pencuri sempat diciduk di perempatan jalan.
able [adj.] ‘having ability’ cakap, trampil, berbakat

ABOUT
about (= approximately) kira-kira: about eleven o’clock kira-kira jam sebelas
(= almost) hampir: It’s about time. Sudah hampir waktunya.
about to (= going to, on the point of) baru akan;
(= planning to) berniat untuk
(= concerning) tentang, mengenai, perihal
(= around, here and there) verb with ber—an:
to wander about berkeluyuran
to be spread about bersérakan
to cruise about berkeliaran
to fly about beterbangan
to run about berlari-larian
(= because of?) karena
What about…? Bagaimana kalau….?
to set about (a job) menggarap, mulai menggerakkan
**AFTER**

after (adv., conj.) sesudah, setelah
(before verbs) habis, selesai
after all (= as you might expect) nota béne; (having considered) akhirnya; anyhow bagaimana pun (juga), toh, toh ada gunanya
to be after (= look for, pursue) mencari, mengejar
to take after (= resemble) mirip
to follow after menyusul, mengikuti
After you! Silakan duluan!

**ALL**

all alone seorang diri
all together bersama-sama
All right! (= okay!) Baiklah!
all over the place (= everywhere) di mana-mana
gone habis semuanya
all the time terus-menerus, selalu
all at once (= suddenly) tiba-tiba
all but (= almost) hampir, nyaris (to give a negative connotation)
all over (= finished) selesai
in all (= in total) semuanya
most of all paling
Is that all? Ini saja? Itu saja?
at all: Can I help you at all? Apakah (sekitanya) saya bisa bantu?
not... at all tidak... sama sekali
all the more... makin lama makin...
all night semalam suntuk
all-important terpenting
all-Indonesia se-Indonesia

**ANY**

Sometimes not translated:
Are there any letters? Apakah ada surat?
I haven’t got any. Saya tidak punya / Tidak ada.

In combinations:
anywhere (= in any place) di mana saja
anywhere (= to any place) ke mana saja
anything apa saja
anyone siapa saja
any one (out of several) mana saja
any time kapan saja
any time now (= very soon) tidak lama lagi / dalam waktu singkat

any more (= no longer) lagi: He doesn’t work here any more. Dia sudah tidak bekerja di sini lagi.

Are you any better? Apakah sudah merasa lebih baik?

**AS**

as (= in the capacity of) sebagai: as a linguist... sebagai ahli bahasa...
(seem like) seperti: as usual seperti biasa
(as... as, in comparisons) se-=: as high as a mountain setinggi gunung
as far as (= until, up to) sampai: as far as the main road sampai jalan besar
as far as (= to the extent that) se-=: as far as I know setahu saya
as for (= concerning) kalau
as good as (= almost) praktis / boléh dikatakan
as long as (= while) selama
as long as (while there’s still time) mumpung
as one (= all together) serentak / sekaligus
as soon as begitu
as (= when) ketika
as (= because) karena
as though seolah-olah / seakan-akan
as to (= regarding) tentang / mengenai

**ASK**

to ask a question tanya, bertanya: May I ask your name? Boléh tanya nama anda?
to ask about bertanya tentang / menanyakan
to ask oneself bertanya pada diri sendiri (cf. to wonder bertanya-tanya dalam hatinya)
to ask out (= invite) mengajak berkencan
to ask for minta (= request) mohon
a big ask (= challenge) tantangan besar
for the asking tinggal minta saja
I ask you! (exclamation of amazement, = how is it possible!) Bagaimana mungkin!
to be asking for trouble mengundang masalah (terlalu berani)

**BAD**

bad (in general; evil, wicked) buruk: bad weather cuaca buruk
(= ugly) jelék
(= impolite) tak pantas
(= rotten) busuk
(= unwell) kurang énak / kurang séhat
(= naughty) nakal
(= criminal) jahat
bad luck nasib malang
not bad (= pretty good) lumayan / boléh juga
to be bad for (= disadvantage) merugikan
to be bad at kurang pandai
bad-tempered cepat marah

**BEFORE**
(time) sebelum
(in the past, formerly) dulu
before long (in the future, soon) tidak lama lagi, sebentar lagi
(in advance of) lebih dulu / duluan
(place, = in front of) di depan / di muka
in the presence of di hadapan
to have before one (= face) menghadapi, berhadapan dengannya

**BIG**
big (= large) besar
on a big scale besar-besaran
to think big berpikir secara besar-besaran / mengejar ambisi (= grown up) dewasa
to talk big (= brag) membual
big (= elder) sister / big (= elder) brother kakak
big-hearted (magnanimous) besar jiwa / pemurah
too big kebesaran
a big shot pembesar
big-time criminal penjahat kelas kakap
big toe jempol kaki, ibu jari kaki

**BOTH**
both (of them) kedua-duanya / dua-duanya / keduanya
both (the group of two) kedua: both children kedua anak itu
both... and... baik... maupun....

**BY**
by (introducing the agent of a passive verb) oléh.
For example: Email Joel diterima oléh Sari.
Joel’s email was received by Sari.
by (= at) di: by the side of the road di pinggir jalan
by (= via, by way of, through) lewat
by (= with) dengan: What do you mean by that expression? Apa yang dimaksudkan dengan ucapan itu?

by the hour jam-jaman
by the day harian
by the kilo kiloan
by law menurut hukum
by agreement menurut persetujuan
by oneself (= alone) sendirian
by the way, ... omong-omong, ngomong-ngomong, ...
by far jauh
by and large (= generally) pada umumnya
by degrees (= gradually) sedikit demi sedikit
by day siang hari; by night malam hari
by all means (= certainly) pasti
by no means (= definitely not) sama sekali tidak

**CAN / COULD**
can, able to, capable of; to know how to, manage to bisa
can, able to, capable of; -able, -ible dapat
Note: These two ‘modal words’ are very close in meaning, and sometimes interchangeable, but not always. Bisa includes being mentally able, while dapat (perhaps influenced by its second meaning, ‘to get, obtain’) includes being physically capable of doing something.
can, may, allowed to boléh (Note: This is quite different from Malaysian Malay)

**EXAMPLES:**
His grandchild can walk (already). Cucunya sudah bisa jalan.
Were you able (did you manage) to sleep? Bisa tidur?
Of course you can (it’s quite possible). Bisa saja.
It can be said that (we may say that)... Boléh dikatakan (bahwa)... It can’t be predicted. Tidak dapat diramalkan.
What can you do? Apa boléh buat! (idiom)
May I ask a question? Boléh tanya, ya.
Can do! Bisa!

**CALL**
to call (= summon) memanggil
to call (= telephone) menélépon
to call (= name) menyebut: What do you call this?
Ini disebut apa?
to be called (= named) bernama
to call back menélépon kembali
to call for (= require) memerlukan; (= suggest, propose, call on) menyerukan
to call forth (= cause) menimbulkan / menyebabkan
to call off (= cancel) membatalkan
to call in (= drop in) mampir / singgah
to call on (= visit) mengunjungi / berkunjung ke
to call out (= shout) berteriak
to call together (= gather) mengumpulkan
to call up (troops) menggerahkan
call-button kenop panggilan
call-girl wanita panggilan

CARE
to care about (= pay attention to) mempedulikan
to not care (= be indifferent to) tidak peduli
to care for (= take care of, keep) memelihara
to care for (= arrange, manage, run) mengurus
to care for (= keep an eye on, be responsible for) menjaga
to care for (= attend to, look after, tend) mengasuh
to care for (= nurse, treat) merawat
to care for (= like) suka: I don’t care for dogs.
Saya tidak suka anjing.
to take care (= be careful, attentive) berhati-hati
to not care (= not mind, have no objection) tidak berkeberatan
cares (= worries) kesusahan
with care (= accurately) dengan teliti

CARRY
to carry (in general) membawa
(a heavy burden, with others) menggotong
(a load, on the shoulder) memikul
(on the back or hip) menggendong
(in the hand, hanging down) menjingjing
to carry (= transport) mengangkut
to carry off (= abduct, steal) membawa lari
to carry off (= seize, claim) merebut
to carry on (= continue) meneruskan / melanjutkan
to carry out (= implement) melaksanakan
to carry through (= complete) menyelesaikan
to get carried away (= forget oneself) lupa diri

CLEAR
clear (= distinct, explicit) jelas
(= evident, obvious) terang
(of weather) cerah
(of road) kosong
(of liquid, sky) jernih

(to clear (clean up, rubbish) membersihkan
(debts) melunasi
(goods, in a sale) mengobral
(= to approve) mengesahkan
(the table) mengangkat makanan
to clear off (= run away) membolos
to clear up (weather, = stop raining) menjadi terang

COME
to come (= arrive) datang
to come about (= happen) terjadi
to come across (= find, meet) menemukan
to come along (= join in) ikut
to come back (= return) kembali
to come between (= separate) memisahkan
to come down (= descend) turun ke bawah;
(= become less) berkurang
to come forward (= advance) tampil ke muka
to come from (= originate from) berasal dari
to come in (= enter) masuk
to come off (= come loose) terlepas; (= succeed berhasil / jadi
to come out (= emerge) keluar; (of publications) terbit; (of flowers) mekar
to come to (= add up to) berjumlah; (= to become conscious) sadar lagi
to come within (= be included in) tercakup
Come on! (inviting, urging) Ayo!
Come on now! (protesting) Jangan begitu! Sudahlah!

DO
Note: Many different idioms as well as grammatical functions in English.
to be doing (= engaging in an activity): What are you doing? Kamu sedang apa? / Kamu sedang berbuat apa?
to do (= work at) bekerja: What do you do? Anda bekerja sebagai apa?
to do about it (= tackle, deal with) menggarap, menindak: We should do something about it. Harus kita garap, harus kita tindak.
That will do (= be enough) Sudah cukup
do (emphatic function): You do understand, don’t you? Kamu memang mengerti, kan?
It did turn up in the end. Akhirnya muncul juga.
In questions and negatives, no separate translation!
Do you understand? Apakah mengerti?
No, I don’t. Tidak (mengerti).
to do away with (= remove) menghilangkan
to do up (= repair) merenovasi; done up (= decorated) berhias
could do with (= needs) perlu / membutuhkan: It could do with some paint. Perlu dicat.
to do without berjalan tanpa, mengalami kekurangan
done (food) masak
done in (= exhausted) kecapaian

to feel merasa: I feel quite well. Saya merasa cukup sehat.
I feel it’s time to go home. Saya rasa sudah waktu untuk pulang.
it feels... rasanya: It feels nice. Rasanya enak.

END

to end (= to come to an end) berakhir
to end (= bring to an end) mengakhiri
to end it all (= commit suicide) membunuh diri
end [noun] (= extremity) ujung: at the end of the street di ujung jalan
in the end (= finally) akhirnya
the end of the line titik penghabisan
the bitter end saat terakhir
at the end of one’s tether putus asa
at the end of the day (= after considering everything) setelah mempertimbangkan semuanya
to make ends meet belanja dengan uang seadanya
for days on end berhari-hari terus-menerus
at a loose end, tidak bertujuan / tidak tahu kemana
the ends of the earth ujung dunia / ke mana saja
That’s the end of it! Habis perkara!

FEW

cfew (= not many) sedikit
cvery few sedikit sekali

cno fewer than paling sedikit / tidak kurang dari
ca few (= several) beberapa
cquite a few cukup banyak
cfew and far between jarang sekali

FEEL

to feel merasa: I feel quite well. Saya merasa cukup sehat.
I feel it’s time to go home. Saya rasa sudah waktu untuk pulang.
it feels... rasanya: It feels nice. Rasanya enak.

FOR

Time:
for a moment sebentar
for several months selama / untuk beberapa bulan
for eight years selama delapan tahun
for years bertahun-tahun
for a long time lama
for good untuk selama-lamanya
for the time being untuk sementara
for (= to, used for) untuk: money to buy food uang untuk membeli makanan
for (= for the sake of) demi: for your health’s sake demi kesihatanmu
for (= on behalf of) bagi
for (= toward, of feelings) terhadap: feelings of respect for rasa hormat terhadap
as for (= regarding) kalau / bagi
word for word kata demi kata
for sale akan dijual
for fun iseng
for a joke tidak sungguh-sungguh, bercanda
for nothing (= without paying) gratis / tanpa dibayar; (= in vain) dengan sia-sia
thanks for terima kasih atas
to pay for membayar
to pay for schooling membayar uang sekolah
to hope for mengharapkan
to exchange for menukar dengan

FUN

to have fun (= to enjoy oneself, have a good time) bersenang-senang / bermain-main
just for fun (not serious) main-main saja
be to fun (= enjoyable) menyenangkan; (= exciting) asyik

It feels as if it’s going to rain. Rasanya seperti akan hujan.
to feel (= of an object) berasa: The kettle feels hot. Teko berasa panas.
to feel (= have a bodily sensation) terasa: Her feet feel cold. Kakinya terasa dingin.
to feel like (= want to) ingin
to feel (= touch, grope) meraba
to feel for (= sympathize with) merasa kasihan pada
to feel hurt (= offended) tersinggung
I feel (= think) that saya kira...
to feel at home betah, kerasan
to make fun of (= mock) mengolok-olokkan / mengéjék

GET
to get (= obtain) mendapat
to get (= become) menjadi: To get dark Menjadi gelap
Movement in various directions:
to get in/on (modes of transport) naik
to get off/out (transport) turun
to get there (= arrive) tiba / sampai: We got there at 4. Kita tiba (di sana) jam empat.
to get back kembali
to get home pulang / tiba di rumah
to get away (= leave) berangkat; (= escape) losos
to get across menyeberang
to get behind (= be late) terlambat
to get beyond meléwati
to be getting on (in years) lanjut usia
to get on bagaimana: How are you getting on? Bagaimana kabarnya?
How did you get on? Bagaimana hasilnya?
to get over (= recover from) sembuh dari; (= surmount) mengatasi
to get together berkumpul
to get up (= from sleep) bangun, (from a sitting position) bangkit

GIVE
to give (= grant, provide, add) memberi
to give (= contribute) menyumbang
to give (= pay) membayar
to give (= hold, a talk, party etc.) mengadakan
to give and take saling mengalah
to give away (= donate) menghadiahkan / mendedekan, mengamalkan
to give back (= return) mengembalikan
to give birth melahirkan / bersalin
to give in (= admit defeat) menyerah / mengalah
to give off (= emit) mengeluarkan
to give out (= distribute) membagi-bagikan
to give up (= stop, e.g. smoking) berhenti;
(= abandon) meninggalkan
give or take a few (= approximately) kurang-lebih
given to (= have a tendency to) cenderung
given (= a certain) tertentu
I give up! (= to have learned one’s lesson) Kapok aku!

GO
to go (general) pergi
to go (= leave) berangkat
to go (= be lost) hilang
to go (= travel, move) berjalan
to go (= be allowed) boléh
to go (= become) menjadi: S. is going mad. S. menjadi gila.
to go across menyeberang
to go after mengikuti / menyusul
to go along ikut serta
to go around [trans.] mengelilingi / berédar,
berkeliling [intrans.]
to go away pergi; berangkat; hilang
to go back kembali
to go before mendahului
to go by léwat
to go down turun; (= become less) berkurang
to go in masuk
to go into memasuki
to go on with (= continue) meneruskan
(to go on with) meneruskan
to go out keluar; (= be extinguished) padam
to go through (= experience) mengalami
to go together/with (= fit) cocok
to go up naik; (= increase) meningkat

GOOD
good (general: quality, condition, character) baik
to taste, feel good énak
to have a good time bersenang-senang
How good to see you! Senang sekali bertemu dengan kamu!
to be good at pandai
to be good for berguna untuk
as good as (= almost) as good as new dapat dikatakan baru?
good-hearted baik hati
good-looking cantik (girls), ganteng, cakap (boys)
Good luck! Selamat! Sukses!
Good morning Selamat pagi!
a good deal (= quite a lot) cukup banyak
Good heavens! (in surprise) Aduh! Ya Allah!
(Isl.)

HAPPEN
to happen (= to occur) terjadi: What’s happened?
Apa yang terjadi?
(by coincidence) kebetulan: It happened to be a Friday. Kebetulan hari Jumat.
(possibly, might) kiranya, barangkali: Do you happen to know her name? Apakah (kiranya) kamu tahu namanya?
to happen on (= to find) menemukan, kedapatan
to have happen to one (= to experience something) ditimpa, kena: What happened to you? Kamu kena apa? Kamu kenapa? (kena + apa); (= to get lost) What’s happened to my watch? Jamku hilang ke mana?
as it happens..., sebenarnya...kebetulan

**HARD**
hard (not soft) keras: a hard mattress kasur keras
to work hard bekerja keras
hard liquor minuman keras
(difficult, troublesome) sukar: It’s hard to find work. Sukar mencari pekerjaan.
(difficult, tough, complex) rumit
(complicated, intricate) sulit
(hard to find, get; burdensome, troublesome) susah
(hard to bear, serious, severe) berat
hard up kekurangan uang / miskin
hard and fast mutlak
hard cash uang kontan
hard-headed keras kepala
hard-hearted keras hati
hard luck nasib malang
hard of hearing susah mendengar

**HAVE**
to have (= to be there) ada: Do you have a cat? We do! Apakah ada kucing? Ada!
Beras: Do you have a family? (= are you married?) Apakah sudah berkeluarga?
to have (= own) punya: They have two cars. Meréka punya dua buah mobil.
the owner yang punya
to have (= possess) mempunyai: the ones who have the right... yang mempunyai hak...
to have (= cause, order) menyuruh: Just have it pulled out! Suruhlah dicabut saja!
NOTE: ‘has/have...-ed’ forms a past tense in English; use sudah in Indonesian: Have you eaten? Sudah makan?
Many idioms with ‘have’, e.g.
to have breakfast makan sarapan
to have a baby melahirkan anak
to have a cold pilek
to have a fright terkejut
to have a good time bersenang-senang
to have an inspiration mendapat ilham

**HERE**
here (= this place) sini; (= in this place) di sini;
 (= to this place) ke sini
Here you are! (giving something) Silakan!
Here’s the room. Ini kamarnya.
Here it is! Inilah dia!
my friend here teman saya ini
here and there sana-sini
Here goes! Mari! Coba saja!
up to here in work sampai tenggelam dalam kesibukan

**HOW**
how? Bagaimana?: How does it work? Bagaimana kerjanya?
How are things going? Bagaimana kabarnya?
how (= the way, method) caranya: This is how you do it. Begini caranya.
how much? Berapa?: How much does it cost? Berapa harganya?
how many? Berapa?: How many are there? Ada berapa?
how often? (= how many times?) Berapa kali?
How many times a week? Berapa kali seminggu?
How far? Berapa jauhnya?: How far is it from here? Berapa jauhnya dari sini?
How! (betapa adj. + -nya): How big he’s grown! Betapa besarnya!
Alangkah (adj. + -nya): How beautiful it is! Alangkah indahnya!
how much betapa: She doesn’t know how much I love her. Dia belum tahu betapa saya mencintainya.
how is it that...? How come...? (= why?) kenapa / mengapa?
How about...? Bagaimana kalau...: How about we eat out tonight? Bagaimana kalau kita makan di luar malam ini?
How are you going? (= how are you?) Apa kabar?
How will we go? (= by what mode of transport?) Kita naik apa?

**IF**
if (= on condition that) kalau, jika: If I get the opportunity... Kalau ada kesempatan...
Ahether) apakah It's not clear if the conference will go ahead or not. Belum jelas apakah konferensinya akan berlangsung atau tidak. If only! (= just imagine) bayangkan! (I wish it was) mudah-mudahan if for instance (= supposing) (kalau) seandainya, seumpamanya even if kalau sekalipun a bit iffy kurang meyakinkan See also that.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IN</th>
<th>in (location) di: in town di kota; in the country di pedesaan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(time) in time (= punctual) pada waktunya; (= gradually) lama-kelamaan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a week's time (future) seminggu lagi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in two hours (time taken) dalam waktu dua jam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the dry season pada musim kering / kemarau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in my opinion menurut pendapat / hémat saya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in case of fire kalau ada pembakaran</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in these circumstances dalam keadaan ini</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the context/frame work dalam rangka</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in writing secara tertulis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be in (= present, at home) ada; (= to have arrived) sudah sampai/masuk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ins and outs seluk-beluk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IT</th>
<th>Often no direct translation needed in Indonesian.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examples:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's hot. Panas.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's raining. Hujan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's a pity. Sayang.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It hurts. Sakit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's a long way. Jauh.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It doesn't matter. Tidak apa-apa.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's important. Penting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much is it? Berapa harganya?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like it? Apakah suka?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't believe it! Saya tidak percaya / masak!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drink it up! Minumlah!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don't worry out it. Jangan kuatir.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What can you do about it? Apa boléh buat?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JUST</th>
<th>just (= only) saja: just a little/a bit sedikit saja; Just joking! Main-main saja!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>just baru: The program's just begun. Acaranya baru mulai.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just now (= a moment ago) tadi / baru-baru ini; (= only recently) baru saja</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just (= exactly) tepat: Just in time. Tepat pada waktunya.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= really) benar-benar: It's just great here! Benar-benar senang di sini!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(with imperative) saja: Just look! Lihat saja!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just [adj.] (= fair) adil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just as / like seperti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just in case, lest (= as a precaution) untuk jaga-jaga / supaya jangan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KNOW</th>
<th>to know (= be acquainted with) kenal dengan (a person); (= be familiar with) kenal akan (matters)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to get to know mengenal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to know (= identify, recognize) mengenali</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>known (= well known, recognized) terkenal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to know by sight kenal tanpa tahu nama orang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to know (= understand, be well informed) tahu; (= to find out about) mengetahui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to know no bounds (= unlimited) tanpa batas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to know the ropes (= be experienced) berpengalaman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to not want to know (= don't care) tak peduli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You-know (= can't mention the word) anu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodness knows! (= I have no idea) Kurang tahu saya!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LEARN</th>
<th>to learn [(intrans.), = to do study about) belajar: to learn Javanese belajar bahasa Jawa; [(trans.) = to study) mempelajari: to learn how to peel a mango mempelajari caranya mengupas mangga</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(= hear, find out about) mendapat kabar bahwa / mendengar / mengetahui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= learn by heart, memorize) menghafalkan learned terpelajar / berilmu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learning (noun) (= science) pengetahuan / ilmu pengetahuan; (= being learned) keterpelajaran</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| LEAVE | to leave (= to depart, set out, go away) berangkat, pergi, keluar dari |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LIKE</strong></td>
<td>to like suka: I like eating chocolate. Saya suka makan coklat.; I like you! Saya suka kamu! (= be attached to, fond of, have a preference for) menyukai: whatever you like sesuka hatimu like (= resembling) seperti: To swim like a fish. Berenang seperti ikan. (= such as) seperti: a paper like Kedaulatan Rakyat Surat kabar seperti K.R. like ([adj.] = of the same) se-: like-minded sependapat and the like dan lain-lain, dan sebagainya like this begini like that begitu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LIVE</strong></td>
<td>to live (= be alive) hidup: still living/ alive masih hidup (= have a way of life) hidup: to live according to one’s religion hidup sesuai dengan agama (= to reside) tinggal / bertempat tinggal: Sari lives in Pasar Minggu. Sari tinggal di Pasar Minggu. live [adj.] hidup: live fish ikan hidup; live music musik hidup to live together hidup bersama, tinggal bersama to live apart hidup terpisah to live on hidup dari / dengan to live through (= experience) mengalami to live up to hidup sesuai dengan to live from hand to mouth hidup Senin-Kemis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LOOK</strong></td>
<td>to look (at) (= see) melihat (= have the appearance of) kelihatan (look at and notice; consider) memandang to look about / around melihat-lihat to look toward, in the direction of menoléh (back: ke belakang; to the right: ke kanan etc.) to look for mencari to look into (= examine) memeriksa, mengusut to look on (= consider as) menganggap to look up to (= respect) menghormati, mencontoh Look, it’s like this... Begini, ya... Look out! Awas! looks (noun) (= appearance) rupa: (= face) wajah good looks (= smart appearance) ketampanan; (male) kegantengan; (female) kecantikan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
very much sekali. He likes her very much. Dia suka sekali padanya.
much as... walaupun: Much as we tried, it still wasn’t finished. Walaupun kita berusaha keras, namun belum selesai juga.

**MUST, HAS TO, SHOULD, OUGHT TO**

( general) *harus*: Tap water has to (should) be boiled before it can be drank. Air *keran harus direbus sebelum diminum.*

You ought to *harus!* (= should have, but didn’t) *seharusnya*

( = without fail, for sure, certainly; stronger than *harus*) *mesti*: If the traffic’s as blocked as this, we’re sure to miss the plane. *Kalau lalu lintas macet begini, kita mesti ketinggalan pesawat.* (= should be) *semestinya* as it should be seperti semestinya

(= obligatory, required, compulsory) *wajib*: You must wear a safety belt. *Wajib mengenakan sabuk pengaman.*

(= must have, very likely) *pasti*: He must have caught it from another child. *Penyakit itu pasti ketularan dari anak lain.*

See also *need.*

**NEED**

to need (something) *membutuhkan*

(= require) *memerlukan*

to need to (= have to, ought to, do something) *perlu*: I need to get to the shops. *Saya perlu ke toko.*

(= should) *harus*: Do I need to wait? *Apakah saya harus menunggu?*

No need (= it’s not necessary) *tidak usah*: There’s no need to pay. *Tidak usah membayar.*

need [noun] *kebutuhan / keperluan*: He has few needs. Kebutuhannya tidak banyak.

the need for, (= necessity) *perlunya*: It is not yet clear whether it is necessary to get medicine. *Perlunya mencari obat belum jelas.*

**NO**

No (answer to question) *tidak* (coll. nggak)

(= not any) *tidak* (plus verb and noun): I have no money. *Saya tidak punya uang.* There’s no time. *Tidak ada waktu.*

No longer (= no more, not any more) (sudah) *tidak... lagi*: It’s no longer raining / not raining any more. *Tidak hujan lagi.*

No (= not a) *bukan*: This is no goat! *Ini bukan kambing!*

No way! (= impossible) *Tak mungkin!*

No (= forbidden) *dilarang*: No entry. *Dilarang masuk.*

no good (= bad) *kurang baik*

(= a pity) *sayang*: That’s no good! *Sayanglah!*

no go (= will not go ahead) *tidak jadi*

no one (= nobody) *tidak seorang pun*

No worries! *Oké! Berês!*

**OFF**

to be off (a race) *mulai*

(= don’t like any more) *tidak suka lagi*

(= going bad, rotten) *busuk*

(= cancelled) *dibatalkan*

(= taken off, clothes) *dibuka, dilepas, ditanggalkan*

(= turned off, switch) *mati, dimatikan*

(= loose, e.g. button) *lepas*

a day off *hari libur, tidak masuk*

on and off *sebentar-sebentar*

well off *makmur, mampu*; badly off *miskin*

off-colour (= not feeling well) *kurang enak badan*; (= blue) *cabul sedikit*

off-duty *bebas tugas*

off-season *musim sepi*

off-the-cuff (= spontaneously) *secara spontan*

off-the-record *secara tidak resmi*

**ON**

on (location) *di*

on top of *di atas*

on the right *di sebelah kanan*

on the plane *di dalam pesawat*

on (time) *pada*

on Sunday *pada hari Minggu*

on (a date) *pada tanggal...*

on time *pada waktunya*

on that occasion *pada kesempatan itu*

Other idioms:

on the condition that *dengan syarat*

on condition (= provided) *asal*

on the initiative of *atas prakarsa*

on the authority of *atas kuasa*

on behalf of *untuk, atas nama*

on (= after) *sesudah / setelah*: On arriving in Semarang,... *Sesudah tiba di Semarang,...*

on and off (= from time to time) *sewaktu-waktu*
to be out (=not at home) sedang pergi / tidak ada
di rumah
out of (=none left) kehabisan / tidak ada
out of (=made of, from) dari
out of (=because of) karena
out to it (=unconscious) tidak sadar / pingsan
out of town di luar kota
out of order (=not working) rusak
out of the way (=isolated) terpencil
Out of the (my) way = mobs hlinggir!
over (=above) di atas
over (=more than) lebih / ke atas / léwat
over here di sebelah sini
over there di sana / di sebelah sana
over (during the period of) selama
over the road di seberang jalan
to cross over menyebang
over (=finished, ended) selesai
over it (=better, recovered) sembuh / pulih
to be over (=very happy) luar biasa
senang
to do it over (=repeat) mengulangi
to think it over (=consider) menimbang / memikirkan
to move over (=shift) bergésér
to stay over (=spend the night) menginap
over the hill (=old) lanjut usia
overseas di luar negeri

PASPORT

to please (=make happy, content) menyenangkan;
 (=satisfy) memuaskan
pleased senang / puas
pleasing menyenangkan; (=interesting) menarik;
(=pleasant, to hear, see) énak didengar / dilihat
hard to please (=fussy, choosy) réwél
As you please! (=please yourself) Sesuka hatimu!
Please! (inviting someone to do something) silakan!
(do something for me) tolong...
(formal) harap
(would you please, be so kind as to) sudilah;
(=would you please) minta
(kindly, formal) mohon

POLITE
polite (=civil, courteous, correct) sopan
(=refined) halus
(=ethical, decorous, correct) sopan-santun
(=proper, fitting, in good taste) pantas
(=with good manners, cultured) beradab

POSSIBLE
possible, possibly mungkin
impossible, out of the question tidak mungkin
very possible mungkin sekali
quite possibly kemungkinan besar
How is it possible? Mana mungkin! Masa!
as soon as possible secepat, selekas mungkin
to the fullest extent possible sedapat-dapatnya,
sebisa-bisanya

PUT
to put (=place, lay) menaruh
(=assign a place, locate, deploy) menempatkan
(=lay, place, put down) meletakkkan
(a question) mengajukan pertanyaan
(=express, put in words) mengungkapkan
(=estimate, guess at) menaksir
to put aside menyisihkan
to put away (=save up, store) menyimpan
to put down (=despise, hold in contempt) menghinakan
to put forward (=suggest, offer, propose) menemukakan
to put on (clothes) mengenakan pakaian, berba-ju; (=weight) bertambah gemuk
to put out (fire) memadamkan api / kebakaran
to put together (=collect) mengumpulkan; (=compile) menyusun
to put up with (=be able to bear, endure) tahan

RATHER
rather (=quite, somewhat) agak: This book is rather
boring. Buku ini agak membosankan.
(=quite, a lot) cukup: He’s rather arrogant. Cukup
sombong orangnya.
(=to prefer; would sooner) lebih suka: I’d rather
just stay home. Saya lebih suka tinggal di rumah saja.
(=rather than, instead of) daripada

REMEMBER
to remember ([intrans.], =to be mindful) ingat
(=to be mindful of) ingat akan
(trans.], = to recall, recollect, keep in mind) **mengingat**
(= to have suddenly come to mind) **teringat**
(= to commemorate) **menyampaikan salam:**
Remember me to your little sister. **Sampaikan salam kepada adikmu.**
(= to not forget) **jangan lupa:** Remember to lock the door. **Jangan lupa mengunci pintu.**

**SO**
so (= very) sekali / sangat: I’m so tired. Saya capai sekali.
so (= like that) **begitu:** Of course it’s so. Mémang begitu.
so (= as a result, consequently) **jadi...**
so (= also) **juga:** So am I. Saya juga.
so (= true) **benar:** It’s not so. Tidak benar.
and so,... **maka, ...**
so that (purpose) **supaya**
so... that (degree) **begitu...sehingga**
the so-called **yang dinamakan**
so-and-so **si anu**
so-so **lumayan**
So what? **lantas? terus?**
it so happened that... **kebetulan...**
so far (= till now) **sampai sekarang / selama ini**
So long! (= see you later) **Sampai jumpa!**

**SOME**
(Note: sometimes no separate translation.)
some (= a little, a certain quantity) **sedikit:** Do you want some sambal with that? **Mau pakai sambal sedikit?**; I’ve already got some. **Sudah ada.**
some (= several, a few) **beberapa:** some kilos of rice **beberapa kilo beras**
some...., others... **ada yang... ada yang...** Some are old, others are young **Ada yang tua, ada yang muda**
some (indefinite) some... or other: some person or other **orang entah siapa**
some day (in future) **kapan-kapan**
at some length **agak lama**
at some distance **agak jauh**
someone, somebody **seseorang, ada orang**
somehow **bagaimana pun juga**
 (= approximately) **kurang lebih:** some ten kilometres **kurang lebih sepuluh kilo.**
somewhere **di salah satu tempat / entah di mana:**
She left her keys somewhere. Kuncinya ketinggalan, entah di mana.

**STAND**
to stand ([intrans.], = stand erect) **berdiri**
(= be there) **berada**
(= able to bear) **bertahan**
(= continue to be valid) **berlaku**
as things stand,... **dalam keadaan begini,...**
to stand aside **menginggir / mengundurkan diri**
to stand back **mundur**
to stand by **bersiap / siap-siaga**
to stand for (= mean) **berarti**
(= to allow) **membiarakan / memboléhkan**
to stand in for (= replace) **mengganti**
to stand on (= insist) **menuntut**
to stand out (= excel) **menonjol**
to stand over (= threaten) **mengancam**
to stand up (= rise) **berdiri**

**SAY**
to say (= tell) **bilang:** Who says I’m stingy? **Siapa bilang saya pelit / kikir?**
to say (= speak) **berkata**
to say (= state, tell) **mengatakan** (with object, or **bahwa, that...**
he said **katanya:** What did he say? **Apa katanya?**
 it is said, they say **kata orang / kabarnya / konon**
the said (= aforementioned) **tersebut**
a say (= voice) **suara:** a say in the decision **suara dalam keputusan itu**
it goes without saying (= it is quite clear) **sudah cukup jelas**
to say the word **memberi**
there’s no saying **tak mungkin diramalkan**
when all’s said and done **pada akhir perhitungan**
a saying (= proverb) **pepatah / peribahasa**

**SEEM**
it seems (= the appearance of it is...) **rupanya**
it seems (= the feeling of it is...) **rasanya**
it seems (= apparently) **kelihatannya / nampaknya / rupa-rupanya**
it seems to me (= in my opinion) **pada hémát saya, pada pendapat saya...**
it seems to be (= to have the look of, but not in fact) **kelihatannya**
it seems to be (= it is as if) **seolah-olah**
to set (= place, put) menaruh
(= a clock, trap etc.) memasang
(= fix, determine) menentukan
(the table) mengatur
([intrans.], the sun) terbenam
to set apart mengasingkan
i
(to set aside) menyimpan
I
mena-
(bung; (= put on the side) mengesampingkan
to set hack mengundurkan
to set down (in writing) menuliskan; (= put down, place) meletakkan; (= disembark passengers) menurunkan
to set off (= leave) berangkat
to set up (= arrange, establish) mengadakan / mendirikan
to set out (= leave) berangkat; (= display) memamerkan
set (adj.) (= fixed) tetap
set (= ready) siap

**SURE**
sure 1. (= certain, positive, determined, proven);
2. (= for sure, surely, no doubt, certainly, of course) pasti
Also for a person: I'm sure. Saya pasti.
But: I'm not too sure. Kurang tahu saya.
There's sure to be another chance. Pasti ada kesempatan lain.
For sure! Sure! Tentu! Tentu saja!
surely (= certainly) tentunya (cf. not necessarily belum tentu)
to be sure of (= confident, certain, positive, convinced) yakin: sure of her love Yakin akan cintanya
sure enough (= it turns out that) ternyata / nyatanya

to talk (= say) bilang: Don’t tell anyone! Jangan bilang, ya!
to tell (= inform) memberitahukan
to tell ([trans.] = narrate) menceritakan; ([intrans.], = tell a story) bercerita
to tell (= order) menyuruh
to tell (= state) mengatakan
to tell (= know) tahu: How can I tell? Bagaimana saya bisa tahu?
to tell (= distinguish) mengenali
to tell (the difference) membedakan
to tell on (= make a complaint about) mengadu-
kan
to tell off (= reprimand) menegur
to tell tales (= gossip) bergunjing
to tell the time melihat jam
You’re telling me! Tak usah bilang!
all told (= taking account of everything) kalau di-
hitung semuanya
See also say.

to take after (= resemble) menyerupai / mirip
dengan
to take along membawa (serta)
to take back (= withdraw) menarik kembali
to take down (= note) mencatat
to take for (= guess) mengira
to take out mengeluarkan; (money from account) mengambil; (= extract, tooth) mencabut
to take up with bergaul dengan
to take it (= bear it) tahan

**TALK**
to talk bicara (more formal: berbicara)
(= to have a chat) bercahap
(= chat, converse) ngomong
to talk about (= discuss) membicarakan
to talk back (= dispute) membantah
to talk into (= persuade) membujuk
talk [noun] (= lecture) ceramah; (= rumours) des-as-desus, kabar burung
talks (= discussions) pembicaraan / négosiasi
idle talk, nonsense omong kosong
to give a talking-to, talk like a Dutch uncle mencaci-maki / memarahi
to talk big menyombongkan diri

to take (= get, fetch) mengambil; (= escort) mengantar
to take away mengambil; (= subtract) mengurangi; (= remove) menghilangkan
to take off (aircraft) tinggal landas; (clothes) membuka
to take up (= collect) mengumpulkan; (an offer) menerima; (space) mengambil; (topic) membicarakan
to take in (= trick) menipu
that, those [demonstrative] itu: That becak’s wrecked. Bécek itu rusak.

that, those ([pron.]: one, thing) itu: That’s not very important. Itu tidak begitu penting.

that ([conj.], after verbs of saying etc.) bahwa: The lecturer said that his marks were excellent. But dosén mengatakan bahwa angkanya bagus.

that (after adjectives): zero, or karenə

It’s a pity that we can’t meet again. Sayang kita tidak bisa ketemu sekali lagi.

amazed that héran karenə

disappointed that kecewa karenə

happy that senang karenə

sad that sedih karenə

that perhaps, lest, in case kalau-kalau: She was afraid that there might be a cockroach in the bathroom. Dia takut kalau-kalau ada coro dalam kamar mandinya.

so that supaya / agar

like that, that way beginətu

That’s it! (the end of the matter) Habis perkara!

In most positions, no translation, e.g.

the State negara

the middle class golongan tengah

on the edge of the river di tebing sungai

But in other places, when specific, not general: itu

There’s a bird’s nest in the mango tree. Ada sarang burung di dalam pohon mangga itu.

at the time pada waktu itu

the rich (= rich people) orang kaya

the … one(s) yang: the first (one) yang pertama; the last (one) yang terakhir

the… the… makein… makin: the more the merrier

makin banyak makin ramai

the (a language) bahasa: borrowed from the Sanskrit dipinjam dari bahasa Sanskreta

There you are! (= that’s it) Itu dia!

there comes a time to… tibalah waktunya untuk

thing (= object) benda

thing (= matter, case) hal: And another thing...

Dan hal lain juga...

thing (= problem, question, matter) soal: There’s another thing that needs to be thought about...

Ada soal lagi yang perlu dipikirkən

things (= luggage) barang-barang

things (= clothes) pakaian

things (= tools) alat-alat

things (= the situation) keadaan: Things are looking up! Keadaannya membaik!; How are things?

Bagaimana kabarnya?
The thing is, … Soalnya,…

the … thing (adjective + -nya): The main thing is, … Pokoknya,…

the funny thing is, … Anéhnya,…

it’s not the thing to do (= not polite) tidak pantas

Just the thing! Ini dia! Tepat yang diinginkan!

to think (= reflect, muse) berpikir

to think things over berpikir-pikir

to think about (someone or something) memikirkan

to think (= have occur to one) terpikir

to think of (= hold an opinion about) berpendapat tentang

without thinking tanpa dipikir

to think aloud berpikir dengan suara keras

to think back to mengenang

to think better of (= regret) menyesal; (= repent) tobat

to think big mempunyai cita-cita tinggi

to think nothing of memberikan diri / menganggap mudah

to think out memecah masalah

to think over mempertimbangkan

to think through memikirkan masak-masak

to think up mencari akal

time (= o’clock) jam (formal: pukul): What time is it? Jam berapa?

time (general) waktu: I have no time! Tidak ada waktu!
at that time pada waktu itu
right on time tepat pada waktunya
from time to time sewaktu-waktu / kadang-kadang
at the same time pada waktu yang sama / sekali
time (= occasion) kali: every time setiap kali
time after time (= repeatedly) berkali-kali
time (= period, era) jaman (formal: zaman): in the
time of the VOC Pada jaman VOC
any time kapan saja
all the time (= always) selalu
at no time (= never) tak pernah
for the time being untuk sementara
take one’s time (= not rush) dengan santai /

dibutuhkan

take time out (= have a break, rest) beristirahat

time off (= a holiday) libur
in quick time cepat-cepat: All in good time! (= be
patient) Sabarilah dulu!

### THROW

to throw melémparkan (e.g. ball, stone); me
nyorotkan (light)
to throw away (rubbish) membuang
to throw down menjatuhkan
to throw on (clothes) memakai (baju) dengan
tergesa-gesa
to throw over (= abandon) meninggalkan
to throw out (= evict) mengusir; (= reject) menolak
to throw up (= vomit) muntah
to throw a party mengadakan pesta
to throw a fit bertingkah / menunjukkan émosi

### TO

to (direction toward, a place) ke
(to a person) kepada
(talking to) dengan
to (for, used for) untuk: money to buy food uang
untuk membeli makan
to (up to, until, as far as) sampai
to (regarding, toward) terhadap: attitude toward
corruption sikap terhadap korupsi
to (= before the hour) kurang: a quarter to one jam
satu kurang seperempat
in order to supaya

Note: the ‘to’ of the English infinitive (e.g. ‘to give’) has no Indonesian translation.

### TOO

too (= excessive) terlalu: Your composition’s too
long. Karanganmu terlalu panjang.
That’s too much! (= going too far) Terlalu!
too (= also) juga: Their cat’s fat too. Kucing
meréka juga gemuk.
pun He feels sad too. Dia pun merasa sedih.
too much (= in excess) lebih: This account’s
100,000 too much. Rékening ini 100.000 lebih
Too bad! Sayang sekali!
all too soon terlalu cepat

### TOUCH

to touch (= brush lightly against, come into contact
with) menyentuh
to be touching, to touch each other bersentuhan
to touch (= feel, handle) menjamah
to touch (= grope, caress, fondle) meraba
to touch (up)on (a subject) menyenggung
to touch, be touching (the heart) mengharukan
to get in touch with (= contact) menghubungi
to keep in touch tetap berhubungan
to touch down (= land, aircraft) mendarat

### TRUE

true (= right, correct, according to fact) benar
true (= genuine) sejati
true (= exact) cocok
true (= loyal) setia
true (= actual) sebenarnya
true (= real, not a lie) betul
to come true (= be granted, wish) terkabul
to be true to one’s word mematuhi janji
It’s true! (= not kidding) Betul!
to true to life (= according to the facts) sesuai den
gan kenyataan
to true to form (= according to character) sesuai den
gan wataknya

### TURN

to turn ([intrans.], in a certain direction) belok
(more formal: berbelok): to turn to the north bélok
tu utara
to turn ([intrans.], = go round, e.g. wheel) berputar
to turn (= become) menjadi: It turned sour. Men
jadi pahit.
to turn ([trans.], = turn over) membalik: to turn the
page membalik halaman
to turn (records, tapes) memutar
to turn (the face) memalingkan

to turn (= point something in a direction) mengarahkan

to turn back (= return) kembali / berbalik

to turn down (= refuse) menolak

to turn into (= become) berubah menjadi

to turn off (tap) menutup; (electricity) mematikan

to turn on memasang / menghidupkan

to turn out (= end) berakhir

to turn over membalikkan, (in bed) berguling

to turn up (= increase sound) mmbesarkan.

very (emphatic) juga: that very day hari itu juga

very (exact) tepat: his very words katanya persis

not very tidak begitu

Very well! Baiklah!
to do one’s very best berusaha sebaik-baiknya

the very first pertama-tama

at the very most paling banyak / sebanyak-banyaknya

at the very least paling sedikit / sekurang-kurangnya

WANT
to want to mau (also: willing; going to): What do you want (to do)? Mau apa?
ingin (= wish, desire, would like to): I want to see that film. Saya ingin menonton film itu.
to want (= require, need) membutuhkan: Wanted, a nightwatchman Dibutuhkan, seorang jaga malam

to want (= ask) minta: How much do you want for that bike? Minta berapa untuk sepédá itu?
to want (= desire, wish for, long for) menginginkan: The lecturer wants her students to make good progress with their language study. Bu dosén menginginkan supaya mahasiswanya maju dalam studi bahasa meréka.
to want (= wish for, desire, have in view) menghendaki, undesirable tidak dihendaki

wants [noun] kebutuhan

for want of (= lacking) karena kekurangan

wanting (= missing, lacking, not enough) kurang

WAY

way (general) jalan; (= street, road) jalan, Jl.; (= method) cara

in a ... way secara: in a regular / orderly way secara teratur

all the way ( = completely) sepenuhnya / sampai selesai

by way of (= via) léwat / melalui
to get one’s way mendapat apa yang diingini
to get in the way (= obstruct) menghalangi / merintangi jalan

to give way (= surrender) mengalah / menyerah;

(= collapse) ambruk

to go one’s own way menurut kemauan sendiri
to go out of one’s way merépotkan diri / bersusah-payah

in a way (= somewhat) sedikit banyak

in no way (= not at all) tidak...sama sekali
to know one's way around tahu jalan / mengerti seluk-beluk
to lead the way memimpin / merintis jalan
to look the other way (= pretend not to know) pura-pura tidak tahu
to lose one's way tersesat
to make one's way (= advance) berhasil maju / naik pangkat
to make way for melapangkan / membuka jalan untuk
out of the way (= isolated) terpencil
to see one's way (= pretend not to know) pura-pura tidak tahu
to lose one's way tersesat
to make one's way (= advance) berhasil maju / naik pangkat
to lead the way memimpin / merintis jalan
to look the other way (= pretend not to know) pura-pura tidak tahu
to lose one's way tersesat
to make one's way (= advance) berhasil maju / naik pangkat
to make way for melapangkan / membuka jalan untuk
out of the way (= isolated) terpencil
to see one's way (= pretend not to know) pura-pura tidak tahu
to lose one's way tersesat
to make one's way (= advance) berhasil maju / naik pangkat
to lead the way memimpin / merintis jalan
to look the other way (= pretend not to know) pura-pura tidak tahu
to lose one's way tersesat
to make one's way (= advance) berhasil maju / naik pangkat
to make way for melapangkan / membuka jalan untuk
out of the way (= isolated) terpencil
to see one's way (= pretend not to know) pura-pura tidak tahu
to lose one's way tersesat
to make one's way (= advance) berhasil maju / naik pangkat
to lead the way memimpin / merintis jalan
to look the other way (= pretend not to know) pura-pura tidak tahu
to lose one's way tersesat
to make one's way (= advance) berhasil maju / naik pangkat
to make way for melapangkan / membuka jalan untuk
out of the way (= isolated) terpencil
to see one's way (= pretend not to know) pura-pura tidak tahu
to lose one's way tersesat
to make one's way (= advance) berhasil maju / naik pangkat
to lead the way memimpin / merintis jalan
to look the other way (= pretend not to know) pura-pura tidak tahu
to lose one's way tersesat
to make one's way (= advance) berhasil maju / naik pangkat
to make way for melapangkan / membuka jalan untuk
out of the way (= isolated) terpencil
to see one's way (= pretend not to know) pura-pura tidak tahu
to lose one's way tersesat
to make one's way (= advance) berhasil maju / naik pangkat
too much, if you hadn’t told us this. Kita akan membayar terlalu banyak, kalau anda tidak memberitahu.

Mau (= want to): The engine won’t start. Mesin-nya tak mau hidup.

‘Would’ in polite requests:
Would you please... tolong / minta / mohon / silakan: Would you please be seated. Silakan duduk.

In plain requests:
...would you ..., ya: Wash these clothes, would you? Pakaian ini dicuci, ya?
Will do! Baiklah! / Oké!

**WITH**

with (= together with) dengan

(= by means of) dengan

Ber-= with white hair berambut putih.

with pleasure dengan senang hati

with white hair berambut putih

with respect/regard to mengenai

with the exception of terkecuali

to have nothing to do with tidak berurusan dengan

to do (something) with (something) Diapakan?

What do you do with it?

with all one’s strength sekuat-kuatnya
coffee with milk kopi susu

**WORK**

to work (at a job) bekerja

to work (= go) jalan: My watch isn’t working.
     Jamku tidak jalan.

to work (= make move) menggerakkan

to work (= be effective) mujarab: The medicine works. Obat itu mujarab.

to work on/at mengencerkan

to work off (debt) melunasi dengan bekerja

to work on (= influence) mempengaruhi

to work out (a puzzle) memecahkan

(= determine) menentukan

(= exercise) berolahraga

to work it out (= understand) mengerti

to work it out (a puzzle) menjelaskan

to work it out (to be unemployed) menganggur

a work (artistic, scholarly) karya

the works (machine, engine) mesin

to be worked up bergairah